NOMINATION of
THE HISTORIC MONUMENTS AND
SITES IN KAESONG
for Inscription on the World Heritage List

Democratic People’s Republic of Korea
NOMINATION of

THE HISTORIC MONUMENTS AND SITES

IN KAESONG

for Inscription on the World Heritage List

Democratic People’s Republic of Korea
# CONTENTS

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 1. IDENTIFICATION OF THE PROPERTY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 (a)</td>
<td>Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 (b)</td>
<td>State, Province or Region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 (c)</td>
<td>Name of Property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 (d)</td>
<td>Geographical coordinates to the nearest second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 (e)</td>
<td>Maps and plans, showing the boundaries of the nominated property and buffer zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 (f)</td>
<td>Area of nominated property (ha.) and proposed buffer zone (ha.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 2. DESCRIPTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 (a)</td>
<td>Description of Property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 (b)</td>
<td>History and Development</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 3. JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3 (a)</td>
<td>Criteria under which Property is nominated (and justification for inscription under these criteria)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 (b)</td>
<td>Statement of Outstanding Universal Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 (c)</td>
<td>Comparative analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 (d)</td>
<td>Authenticity and integrity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 4. STATE OF CONSERVATION AND FACTORS AFFECTING THE PROPERTY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4 (a)</td>
<td>Present State of Conservation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 (b)</td>
<td>Factors affecting the Property</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 5. PROTECTION AND MANAGEMENT OF THE PROPERTY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5 (a)</td>
<td>Ownership</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 (b)</td>
<td>Protective designation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 (c)</td>
<td>Means of implementing protective measures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 (d)</td>
<td>Existing plans related to municipality and region in which the proposed property is located</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 (e)</td>
<td>Property management plan and management system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 (f)</td>
<td>Source and scale of finance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 (g)</td>
<td>Sources of expertise and education for techniques of conservation and management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 (h)</td>
<td>Facilities and statistics for visit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 (i)</td>
<td>Policies and programs for understanding and promotion of the property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 (j)</td>
<td>Staffing levels (professional, technical, maintenance)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 6. MONITORING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6 (a)</td>
<td>Key indicators for measuring state of conservation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 (b)</td>
<td>Administrative arrangements for monitoring property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 (c)</td>
<td>Results of previous reporting exercises (provide title and brief summary of each of the reports mentioned below)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 7. DOCUMENTATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subsection</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7 (a)</td>
<td>Photographs, slides, image inventory and authorization table and other audiovisual materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 (b)</td>
<td>Texts relating to protective designation, copies of property management plans or documented management systems and extracts of other plans relevant to the property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 (c)</td>
<td>Form and date of most recent records or inventory of the property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 (d)</td>
<td>Address where inventory, records and archives are held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 (e)</td>
<td>Bibliography</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
8. CONTACT INFORMATION OF RESPONSIBLE AUTHORITIES..........................237
   8 (a) PREPARER .................................................................................................................................237
   8 (b) OFFICIAL LOCAL INSTITUTION / AGENCY .................................................................237
   8 (c) OTHER LOCAL INSTITUTIONS .........................................................................................237
   8 (d) OFFICIAL WEB ADDRESS .............................................................................................238

9. SIGNATURE ON BEHALF OF THE STATE PARTY .................................................241

APPENDICES .........................................................................................................................245
   APPENDIX 1: GLOSSARY .............................................................................................................245
   APPENDIX 2: CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF THE HISTORY OF KAESONG .............................................247
   APPENDIX 3: LETTER OF AUTHORIZATION FOR PHOTOGRAPHS USED IN NOMINATION DOCUMENTS ...............................249
   APPENDIX 4: LAWS RELATED TO THE PROTECTION OF CULTURAL HERITAGE ...........................................251
   APPENDIX 5: STRUCTURE OF KAESONG CITY CULTURAL PRESERVATION COMMITTEE .................................276
LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1: Diagrammatic representation of ................................................................. 25
Figure 2: General view of Manwoldae against Mt. Songak ........................................ 26
Figure 3: Four Great Staircases before the site of Hoegyong Hall ............................ 28
Figure 4: Site of the Western Group of Buildings ....................................................... 30
Figure 5: Sites of palace buildings in central group of buildings, Manwoldae .......... 32
Figure 6: Sites of gates in Manwoldae ................................................................. 33
Figure 7: Remains of Kaesong Chomsongdae ......................................................... 36
Figure 8: Architectural structure of Kaesong Chomsongdae ................................. 36
Figure 9: “Manwol Hoego” (1612) ........................................................................ 37
Figure 10: Kaesong Chomsongdae ........................................................................ 39
Figure 11: Western part of the Outer Wall, Kaesong Walls ....................................... 43
Figure 12: Kaesong Namdae Gate ........................................................................ 48
Figure 13: Kaesong Namdae Gate ......................................................................... 50
Figure 14: General view of Koryo Songgyungwan .................................................. 53
Figure 15: Lecture-hall Compound ......................................................................... 54
Figure 16: Koryo Songgyungwan ......................................................................... 56
Figure 17: Myongryun Hall, Koryo Songgyungwan ................................................ 57
Figure 18: East dormitory, Koryo Songgyungwan .................................................. 58
Figure 19: Taesong Hall, Koryo Songgyungwan ..................................................... 59
Figure 20: General view of Sunyang Sowon ............................................................ 62
Figure 21: Portrait of Jong Mong Ju in the west room of shrine ................................. 63
Figure 22: Memorial tablets of Confucian scholars in the east room of shrine ........ 64
Figure 23: Sunyang Sowon ................................................................................... 65
Figure 24: Lecture hall and shrine, Sunyang Sowon ............................................... 66
Figure 25: Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments .............................................. 69
Figure 26: Sonjuk Bridge ..................................................................................... 71
Figure 27: Pavilion for Phyochung Monuments ..................................................... 71
Figure 28: Phyochung Monuments ........................................................................ 72
Figure 29: Sonjuk Bridge ..................................................................................... 73
Figure 30: Distant view of Mausoleum of King Wang Kon ..................................... 76
Figure 31: General view of Mausoleum of King Wang Kon .................................... 77
Figure 32: Stele pavilions at Mausoleum of King Wang Kon ................................ 78
Figure 33: Mausoleum of King Wang Kon ............................................................. 79
Figure 34: Burial chamber of Mausoleum of King Wang Kon .............................. 80
Figure 35: Gate and shrine at Mausoleum of King Wang Kon .............................. 81
Figure 36: Distant view of Seven Tombs Cluster ..................................................... 84
Figure 37: Tomb No. 1, Seven Tombs Cluster ........................................................ 86
Figure 38: Tomb No. 2, Seven Tombs Cluster ........................................................ 86
Figure 39: Tomb No. 3, Seven Tombs Cluster ........................................................ 87
Figure 40: Tomb No. 4, Seven Tombs Cluster ........................................................ 87
Figure 41: Tomb No. 5, Seven Tombs Cluster ........................................................ 88
Figure 42: Tomb No. 6, Seven Tombs Cluster ........................................................ 88
Figure 43: Tomb No. 7, Seven Tombs Cluster ........................................................ 89
Figure 44: Tomb No.1, Seven Tombs Cluster .......................................................... 90
Figure 45: Tomb No.2, Seven Tombs Cluster .......................................................... 91
Figure 46: Tomb No.3, Seven Tombs Cluster .......................................................... 92
Figure 47: Tomb No.4, Seven Tombs Cluster .......................................................... 93
Figure 48: Tomb No.5, Seven Tombs Cluster .......................................................... 94
Figure 49: Tomb No.6, Seven Tombs Cluster .......................................................... 95
Figure 50: Tomb No.7, Seven Tombs Cluster .......................................................... 96
Figure 51: Distant view of Myongrung Cluster ................................................................. 99
Figure 52: Tomb No.1, Myongrung Cluster ................................................................. 100
Figure 53: Tomb No.2, Myongrung Cluster ................................................................. 101
Figure 54: Tomb No.3, Myongrung Cluster ................................................................. 101
Figure 55: Tombs No.1 and No.3, Myongrung Cluster ................................................ 102
Figure 56: Tomb No.2, Myongrung Cluster ................................................................. 103
Figure 57: General view of Mausoleum of King Kongmin ........................................... 106
Figure 58: Mural paintings of Mausoleum of King Kongmin ........................................ 107
Figure 59: Arrangements before the mounds of Mausoleum of King Kongmin .............. 108
Figure 60: Acha Peak in front of Mausoleum of King Kongmin .................................... 109
Figure 61: Stone sheep .................................................................................................. 109
Figure 62: Stone tigers .................................................................................................. 110
Figure 63: Stone lantern & Stone pillar ......................................................................... 110
Figure 64: Statue of a military official .......................................................................... 111
Figure 65: Mausoleum of King Kongmin .................................................................... 112
Figure 66: Shrine at Mausoleum of King Kongmin ..................................................... 113
Figure 67: Stone structures at Mausoleum of King Kongmin ...................................... 114
Figure 68: History & Religions of Korea ...................................................................... 119
Figure 69: Map of Kaesong (1872) ............................................................................. 123
Figure 70: Drawing of Kaesong (Kang Se Hwang, 1757) ............................................. 124
Figure 71: Transformation of form of city wall in Koguryo (5th - 6th century) ............... 125
Figure 72: Kaesong of Koryo and Changan of Tang (China) ......................................... 126
Figure 73: Layout of the royal palaces of different periods in Korea .............................. 127
Figure 74: Succession of design of Kukhak ................................................................... 129
Figure 75: “Manwoldae Gyehoedo” (18th century) ...................................................... 130
Figure 76: Northern part of Outer Wall, Kaesong Walls ............................................. 132
Figure 77: Pukchang Gate and Nulli Gate of Outer Wall, Kaesong Walls ....................... 133
Figure 78: Kaesong Namdae Gate in 1902 and 1940s ................................................... 134
Figure 79: Exterior of Myongryun Hall in 1920s and today ......................................... 135
Figure 80: Interior of Myongryun Hall in 1920s and today ......................................... 135
Figure 81: Lecture-hall Compound and stairs up to the Shrine Compound .................. 136
Figure 82: Sonjuk Bridge in 1940s and its monument ................................................... 137
Figure 83: Tomb of King Wang Kon before 1994 reconstruction ............................... 139
Figure 84: Mural paintings of the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon .............................. 140
Figure 85: City walls of various periods in Korea ......................................................... 150
Figure 86: Royal palaces of various periods in Korea ................................................... 151
Figure 87: Layout of the ancient capitals of Korea, China and Japan ......................... 154
Figure 88: Kaesong Namdae Gate (1391-1393) .......................................................... 160
Figure 89: Potong Gate in Pyongyang (1473) .............................................................. 160
Figure 90: Namdae Gate in Seoul (1448) ................................................................. 161
Figure 91: The Shanghaiguan Pass in Qinhuangdao City, Hebei Province, China ....... 161
Figure 92: Koryo Chomsongdae and Kyongju Observatory ......................................... 163
Figure 93: Taesong Hall of Koryo Songgyungwan & the Hall of Great Accomplishment in Qufu .... 165
Figure 94: Brackets of Kaesong Namdae Gate before and after the restoration in 1955 .... 166
Figure 95: District of traditional houses in Kaesong .................................................. 176
Figure 96: Public management of the property .............................................................. 201
Figure 97: Visitors to Koryo Songgyungwan .............................................................. 205
Figure 98: Parking lot at the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon ....................................... 206
Figure 99: Explanatory board at the Mausoleum of King Kongmin ............................ 206
LIST OF MAPS

Map 1: Location of the nominated property – North Hwanghae Province ........................................... 11
Map 2: Location of the nominated property – Kaesong City .................................................................. 12
Map 3: Core zones and buffer zone of the nominated property .......................................................... 16
Map 4: Location of Manwoldae ............................................................................................................ 23
Map 5: Core zone of Manwoldae ........................................................................................................ 24
Map 6: Layout of different groups of buildings in Manwoldae ........................................................... 27
Map 7: Location of Kaesong Chomsongdae ....................................................................................... 34
Map 8: Core zone of Kaesong Chomsongdae ..................................................................................... 35
Map 9: Location of Kaesong Walls ..................................................................................................... 40
Map 10: Core zone of Kaesong Walls ................................................................................................. 41
Map 11: Layout of Kaesong Walls ...................................................................................................... 45
Map 12: Location of Kaesong Namdae Gate ....................................................................................... 46
Map 13: Core zone of Kaesong Namdae Gate ..................................................................................... 47
Map 14: Location of Koryo Songgyungwan ....................................................................................... 51
Map 15: Core zone of Koryo Songgyungwan ..................................................................................... 52
Map 16: Location of Sungyang Sowon .............................................................................................. 60
Map 17: Core zone of Sungyang Sowon ............................................................................................ 61
Map 18: Location of Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments ....................................................... 67
Map 19: Core zone of Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments .................................................... 68
Map 20: Location of Mausoleum of King Wang Kon ........................................................................ 74
Map 21: Core zone of Mausoleum of King Wang Kon ....................................................................... 75
Map 22: Location of Seven Tombs Cluster ......................................................................................... 82
Map 23: Core zone of Seven Tombs Cluster ...................................................................................... 83
Map 24: Location of Myongrung Cluster ............................................................................................ 97
Map 25: Core zone of Myongrung Cluster ........................................................................................ 98
Map 26: Location of Mausoleum of King Kongmin ......................................................................... 104
Map 27: Core zone of Mausoleum of King Kongmin ........................................................................ 105
Map 28: Korea in the early 10th century ........................................................................................... 116
Map 29: History of Korea (12th century BC - AD 14th century) .......................................................... 118
Map 30: Long-term Plan for Urban Construction in Kaesong ............................................................. 228
**LIST OF TABLES**

Table 1: Geographical coordinates of the nominated property .......................................................... 3  
Table 2: Nominated property for inscription on the World Heritage List .......................................... 13  
Table 3: Geographical coordinates of the nominated property .......................................................... 14  
Table 4: Area of the nominated property and proposed buffer zone .................................................. 17  
Table 5: Gates of the Outer Wall in Kaesong (based on Koryosa) ...................................................... 42  
Table 6: Site information of Seven Tombs Cluster ........................................................................... 85  
Table 7: Site information of Myongrung Cluster ............................................................................ 100  
Table 8: Periods of Koryo kings ........................................................................................................ 120  
Table 9: Movement of the corpse of King Wang Kon ....................................................................... 138  
Table 10: Comparison of the ancient capitals in Korea ................................................................. 152  
Table 11: Comparison of the main royal palaces in Korea ............................................................... 152  
Table 12: Comparison of the ancient capitals of Korea, China and Japan ....................................... 155  
Table 13: Comparison of the ancient royal palaces of Korea, China and Japan ................................. 156  
Table 14: Comparison of the royal tombs of various periods in Korea ............................................. 157  
Table 15: Comparison of the royal tombs in Korea, China and Japan .............................................. 159  
Table 16: Comparison of the main wall gates in Korea ................................................................. 162  
Table 17: Recent interventions (1990–2008), present state of conservation and planned .................. 172  
Table 18: Protective designation on the nominated property ........................................................... 186  
Table 19: Institutions authorized with public management of the nominated property ................... 200  
Table 20: Present service facilities .................................................................................................... 205  
Table 21: Visitor statistics (2005–2008) ........................................................................................... 207  
Table 22: Key indicators for measuring the state of conservation .................................................... 211  
Table 23: Image inventory and photograph and audiovisual authorization form ............................ 217  
Table 24: List of References .............................................................................................................. 232  
Table 25: Chronological table of the history of Kaesong ................................................................. 247
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

**State Party:** Democratic People’s Republic of Korea (DPR Korea)

**State, Province or Region:** Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province

**Name of Property:** The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong

**Geographical coordinates to the nearest second:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of Property</th>
<th>Region</th>
<th>Geographical Coordinates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Manwoldae</strong></td>
<td>Songak-dong</td>
<td>37° 59' 01&quot;   126° 32' 27&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kaesong Chomsongdae</strong></td>
<td>Songak-dong</td>
<td>37° 59' 13&quot;   126° 32' 27&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kaesong Walls</strong></td>
<td>Songak-dong, Sungjon-dong, Tokam-ri</td>
<td>South 37° 56' 50&quot;  126° 33' 50&quot;  North 38° 00' 10&quot;  126° 33' 00&quot;  East 37° 58' 42&quot;  126° 35' 31&quot;  West 37° 58' 04&quot;  126° 31' 28&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kaesong Namdae Gate</strong></td>
<td>Pukan-dong</td>
<td>37° 58' 09&quot;   126° 33' 29&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Koryo Songgyungwan</strong></td>
<td>Pangjik-dong</td>
<td>37° 59' 19&quot;   126° 34' 22&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sungyang Sowon</strong></td>
<td>Sonjuk-dong</td>
<td>37° 58' 19&quot;   126° 33' 45&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sonjuk Bridge &amp; Phyochung Monuments</strong></td>
<td>Sonjuk-dong</td>
<td>37° 58' 26&quot;   126° 34' 04&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</strong></td>
<td>Haeson-ri</td>
<td>37° 58' 54&quot;   126° 30' 29&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Seven Tombs Cluster</strong></td>
<td>Haeson-ri</td>
<td>East 37° 59' 13&quot;  126° 30' 26&quot;  West 37° 59' 18&quot;  126° 30' 04&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Myongrung Cluster</strong></td>
<td>Haeson-ri</td>
<td>37° 58' 45&quot;   126° 30' 01&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mausoleum of King Kongmin</strong></td>
<td>Haeson-ri</td>
<td>37° 58' 47&quot;   126° 28' 30&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

Map of the nominated property and buffer zone
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Textual description of the boundaries of the nominated property

The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong are located within the built-up area of Kaesong and extend into the foothills of mountainous area to the west of the town. They are surrounded by an environmental and administrative buffer zone which comprises Mt. Songak to the north, Mt. Jine to the west, Mt. Puhung and Tokam Peak to the east and Mt. Ryongsu to the south in the eastern part; and Mt. Mansu, Ripam village, Sinjong-dong village, Myongrung-dong village and Tumun-dong village in the western part.

Justification

Statement of Outstanding Universal Value

The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong, incorporating twenty monuments and sites from the Koryo period, testifies to the history and culture of Koryo that existed on the Korean Peninsula for about 500 years between 10th century and 14th century. Koryo was the first unified state on the Korean Peninsula, which helped achieve an integral cultural development of Korean nation by amalgamating the region and several cultures. This was a significant contribution to the development of the Korean national and cultural identity.

The twenty monuments and sites include the site of royal palace, city walls and wall gates that show the ruling base of Koryo, its town planning and its urban defence system and monuments, royal tombs and educational institutions related to Confucianism, Buddhism and Taoism that give an understanding of the political ideas of the ruling circles and the religious and philosophical worldview prevalent in society at that time. The town planning of Kaesong, the site of the royal palace and the royal tombs still preserve the characteristics of the geomantic belief, which had a special meaning for the Koryo people, showing their religious world. The importance of the political, cultural, philosophical and spiritual values of the nominated property is based on the fact that Koryo was the first unified state in the history of the Korean Peninsula and the days of Koryo constituted an important stage in achieving the Korean cultural identity making a significant contribution to the cultural development in Far East Asia. Together, all the components of the nominated property represent the characteristics of formation of the first unified state for the Korean nation.

The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong demonstrates the development of the Korean national and cultural identity by assimilating the cultural, spiritual and political values of the various states that existed on the Peninsula prior to the formation of Koryo and through the interchange of such values with other neighbouring kingdoms over five centuries in Kaesong. They reflect the incorporation of
various regional religious and philosophical value systems, such as Buddhism, Confucianism, Taoism and geomancy in various spheres of the state including politics, religion, town planning, urban defence system, architecture and tomb layout principles during the period of the first unified state of Korean nation. The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong therefore exhibit an important interchange of human values over five hundred years within the Korean Peninsula.

Five hundred years of existence as a unified state had helped Koryo develop its own unique cultural traditions. Located in Kaesong, that had been the sole capital of Koryo and the political, economic, cultural and educational centre of the country during the entire period of its existence, the Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong bears exceptional testimony to the development of Korean cultural traditions that are still part of the living society today. The nominated property comprises the oldest and most representative elements of the cultural traditions of Korea that contributed to the diversity of the world culture.

The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong represent one of the most important stages in the cultural development of East Asia when Buddhism was giving way to Confucianism and becoming locally indigenous with the wide spread and consolidation of the Doctrines of Zhu Xi, while the closed towns were developing into the open towns with the economical and commercial growth, and constitute an excellent example of the days of Koryo, which made a contribution to the development of a cultural identity unique to Korea. Koryo culture, based on earlier cultural traditions, reached its highest stage in Kaesong, its capital, and the nominated property, which incorporates the most important components of the capital, shows its unique principles of layout of city, royal palace and tombs inside the peculiar cultural landscape of Kaesong.

The nominated property is well preserved and maintained through several restoration and repair from their first construction. Most of them retained their functions until about 100 years ago, thus they are adequately authentic in respect to use and function, form and design, traditions and techniques, and spirits and feelings. Most parts of the site of the royal palace have been preserved in their original state. The Kaesong Walls still preserve the size and components sufficient for showing their value. Koryo Songgyungwan, Sungyang Sowon, the Phyochung Monuments and the royal tombs convey their original architecture and layout.

All of the components of the nominated property have now been designated as objects of national preservation. The proposed core zones and buffer zone include all the elements and sufficient relations necessary to prove the Outstanding Universal Value of the nominated property. Thus, the values of the nominated property are proved in a comprehensive way by the individual sites and through the relationship between them and between the sites and the natural environment surrounding them.
collectively. The site of the royal palace and a large part of the Kaesong Walls are archaeological sites, and these are planned to be unearthed in the near future. The remaining wall parts and gates have been preserved following the original design and using the same type of materials and techniques. Other sites, such as the Kaesong Namdae Gate, Koryo Songgyungwan, Sungyang Sowon, the Phyochung Monuments and other wooden structures, are repaired using original materials and based on traditional architectural techniques while scientific and technical measures have been taken to prevent damage from blights and natural weathering in line with the characteristics of the materials. As for the royal tombs and wooden structures, special attention is paid to prevent damage from such natural disasters as landslides, flooding and typhoons. Regarding stone structures seriously damaged or eroded, repairs or restoration works have been carried out using the same type of design and materials. Even though Kaesong is active in the industrial development and tourism, any negative pressures do not exist in reality to affect the nominated property.

The nominated property is currently protected under the Law of the DPR Korea on Protection of Cultural Property and being managed jointly by the National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation, The Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office, and the Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon. The general state of their conservation is very good. To better manage the nominated property, including the buffer zone, and to systematically coordinate all conservation measures, a Management Plan has been developed.

Criteria under which property is nominated (itemized criteria)
Criterion numbers (ii), (iii) and (iv).

Name and contact information official local institution/agency
Organisation: National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation (NBCPC)
Address: Oesong-dong, Central district, Pyongyang City
Telephone: +850-2-381-18111
Fax: +850-2-381-4410
E-mail: nbcpc@co.chesin.com
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
1. IDENTIFICATION OF THE PROPERTY

1 (a) Country
1 (b) State, Province or Region
1 (c) Name of Property
1 (d) Geographical coordinates to the nearest second
1 (e) Maps and plans, showing the boundaries of the nominated property and buffer zone
1 (f) Area of nominated property and proposed buffer zone
1. IDENTIFICATION OF THE PROPERTY

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
1. IDENTIFICATION OF THE PROPERTY

1 (a) Country
Democratic People’s Republic of Korea (DPR Korea)

1 (b) State, province or region
Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province (see Map 1)

Map 1: Location of Kaesong City–North Hwanghae Province

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
1 (c) **Name of property**

The name of the property is The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong (see Map 2).

**Map 2: Location of the nominated property – Kaesong City**
Kaesong was the capital of Koryo (918–1392), the first united state on the Korean Peninsula which lasted for nearly 500 years. Preserved in Kaesong, which has a 1000-year long history as a city from the period of Koryo, are a great number of historical sites going back to the days of Koryo. Among these is the nominated property which includes twenty individual sites associated with the Koryo period (see Table 2).

Table 2: Nominated property for inscription on the World Heritage List

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Name of Property</th>
<th>Use of Property</th>
<th>Year of Construction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Manwoldae</td>
<td>Royal palace site of Koryo</td>
<td>Constructed in 919. Reconstructed and expanded in the early 11th century. Reconstructed between 1132 and 1138 and between late 12th century and early 13th century, respectively</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Kaesong Chomsongdae</td>
<td>Astronomical observatory of Koryo period</td>
<td>Early Koryo period (early 10th century)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Kaesong Walls</td>
<td>Defensive wall for the capital of Koryo</td>
<td>Outer Wall: 1009–1029 Inner Wall: 1391–1393 Palocham Wall: 896</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
<td>South gate of Inner Wall of Kaesong Walls</td>
<td>1391–1393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Koryo Songgyungwan</td>
<td>National institution for Confucian education of Koryo period</td>
<td>1367</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Sungyang Sowon</td>
<td>Mansion of a high official in Koryo period, private Confucian school during the Ri dynasty</td>
<td>Late Koryo period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Sonjuk Bridge</td>
<td>Bridge of Koryo period</td>
<td>10th century (early days of Koryo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Phyochung Monuments</td>
<td>Monuments of Ri dynasty¹</td>
<td>North monument: 1740 South monument: 1872</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td>Tomb of founder king of Koryo</td>
<td>943</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-16</td>
<td>Seven Tombs Cluster²</td>
<td>Tomb No.1 Royal tomb of Koryo</td>
<td>12th – 13th century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tomb No.2 Royal tomb of Koryo</td>
<td>13th – 14th century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tomb No.3 Royal tomb of Koryo</td>
<td>13th – 14th century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tomb No.4 Royal tomb of Koryo</td>
<td>13th – 14th century</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ The dynasty established after the overthrow of Koryo (1392–1905)
² Official name
### 1. IDENTIFICATION OF THE PROPERTY

#### NOMINATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Name of Property</th>
<th>Use of Property</th>
<th>Year of Construction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Tomb No.5</td>
<td>Royal tomb of Koryo</td>
<td>13th – 14th century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Tomb No.6</td>
<td>Royal tomb of Koryo</td>
<td>13th – 14th century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Tomb No.7</td>
<td>Royal tomb of Koryo</td>
<td>13th – 14th century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17-19</td>
<td>Myongrung Cluster³</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Myong Tomb (Tomb No.1)</td>
<td>Tomb of the 29th King of Koryo</td>
<td>Mid-14th century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tomb No.2</td>
<td>Royal tomb of Koryo</td>
<td>Mid-14th century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tomb No.3</td>
<td>Royal tomb of Koryo</td>
<td>Mid-14th century</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 20  | Mausoleum of King Kongmin         | Tomb of the 31st King of Koryo and his consort| 1365–1372

#### 1 (d) Geographical coordinates to the nearest second

The geographical coordinates of the nominated property in Kaesong are shown in Table 3.

**Table 3: Geographical coordinates of the nominated property.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of Property</th>
<th>Region</th>
<th>Geographical Coordinates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>North Latitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>East Longitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manwoldae</td>
<td>Songak-dong</td>
<td>37° 59' 01&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>126° 32' 27&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Chomsongdae</td>
<td>Songak-dong</td>
<td>37° 59' 13&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>126° 32' 27&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Walls</td>
<td>Songak-dong, Sungjon-dong, Tokam-dong</td>
<td>South 37° 56' 50&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>North 38° 00' 10&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>East 37° 58' 42&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>West 37° 58' 04&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>126° 33' 50&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>126° 33' 00&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>126° 35' 31&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>126° 31' 28&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
<td>Pukan-dong</td>
<td>37°58' 09&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>126°33’ 29&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koryo Songgyungwan</td>
<td>Pangjik-dong</td>
<td>37° 59' 19&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>126°34’ 22&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sungyang Sowon</td>
<td>Sonjuk-dong</td>
<td>37° 58' 19&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>126°33’ 45&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sonjuk Bridge &amp; Phyochung Monuments</td>
<td>Sonjuk-dong</td>
<td>37° 58' 26&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>126°34’ 04&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td>Haeson-ri</td>
<td>37° 58’ 54&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>126° 30’ 29&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seven Tombs Cluster</td>
<td>Haeson-ri</td>
<td>East 37° 59’ 13&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>West 37° 59’ 18&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>126° 30’ 26&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>126° 30’ 04&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myongrung Cluster</td>
<td>Haeson-ri</td>
<td>37° 58’ 45&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>126° 30’ 01&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>Haeson-ri</td>
<td>37° 58’ 47&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>126° 28’ 30&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

³ Official name
1. IDENTIFICATION OF THE PROPERTY

1 (e) **Maps and plans, showing the boundaries of the nominated property and buffer zone**

The core zones and buffer zone of the nominated property are shown on Map 3. The buffer zone includes all the core zones of the nominated property.

The east part of the buffer zone, which surrounds the central part of Kaesong, is comprised of Mt. Songak in the north, Mt. Jine in the west, Mt. Puhung in the east and Mt. Ryongsu in the south; and west part of the buffer zone is comprised of Mt. Mansu, Ripam, Sinjong-dong, Myongrung-dong and Tumun-dong villages.
1. IDENTIFICATION OF THE PROPERTY

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
1 (f) Area of nominated property (ha.) and proposed buffer zone (ha.)

The areas of the nominated property and proposed buffer zone are given in Table 4.

Table 4: Area of the nominated property and proposed buffer zone

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of Property</th>
<th>Proposed World Heritage Core Area (ha)</th>
<th>Proposed World Heritage Buffer Zone (ha)</th>
<th>Total Area (ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Individual Area(ha)</td>
<td>Total Area(ha)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manwoldae</td>
<td>43.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Chomsongdae</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Walls</td>
<td>175.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koryo Songgyungwan</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sungyang Sowon</td>
<td>2.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seven Tombs Cluster</td>
<td>214.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myongrung Cluster</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>51.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. IDENTIFICATION OF THE PROPERTY

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
2. DESCRIPTION

NOMINATION

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

2 (a) Description of Property
2 (b) History and Development
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
2. DESCRIPTION

Kaesong is situated about 160 kilometres south of Pyongyang, the capital of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea. Its location corresponds to the central part of the Korean Peninsula. All ten individual sites and two tomb clusters included in the nominated property are located in the downtown area of Kaesong City and in the adjoining rural areas.

Kaesong lies in a basin, surrounded by mountains on four sides, with rivers flowing to the east, west and south of the city. The West Sea of Korea (also known as the Yellow Sea, the northern part of the East China Sea) lies to its southwest. River basins and the coastal area cover wide and fertile alluvial plain. Kaesong is an important political, military, economic and transportation hub on the Korean Peninsula.

The nominated property is associated with the most important period of Korean history, known as the Koryo period, when the entire Korean Peninsula was unified under one state for the first time. Prior to Koryo, and at different times in its history, Kaesong was a part of various other states. Kaesong was part of Paekje4 until the 4th century, after which it was ruled by Koguryo5, and from the late 7th century onward it became part of Silla6. Kaesong was a small local village before the 9th century. In 918, Wang Kon, a general born in Kaesong, staged a military coup in the capital (called Cholwon) of Taebong7 and founded a new state, Koryo, and moved the capital to Kaesong in 919. Soon Koryo merged Silla and Hubaekje8 and eventually became the first unified state in the history of the Korean Peninsula and Kaesong became the most powerful political hub on the Korean Peninsula (see Map 29).

The Koryo period represents a very important stage in the history of the region because the cultural development that took place during the five centuries of the Koryo period significantly helped shape a cultural identity that is unique to the Korean nation. Kaesong, as the capital of Koryo, was the centre for assimilation of the cultures that preceded Koryo, and brought into being a new culture whose development took place over a long period of time.

Koryo had developed handicraft and commerce, and its capital, Kaesong, was one of the busiest trade centers in the Far East. Celadon, silks, paper, folding fans and ginseng of Koryo were traded in Kaesong and exported to China, Japan and as far as the Middle East, gaining fame for their quality. Through its brisk trading activities, Kaesong introduced the culture of the Korean Peninsula to the Middle East and to Europe (see Section 2 (b)-2).

---

4 A state in the southwest of the Korean Peninsula from the 3rd century BC to 660 AD
5 A state in the north of the Korean Peninsula and northeast China from 277 BC to 668 AD
6 A state in the south of the Korean Peninsula from 57 BC to 935 AD
7 A state in the middle of the Korean Peninsula from 901 to 918
8 A state that occupied the same part of the southwest of the Korean Peninsula between 900 and 936
“Korea”, in international nomenclature, originated from the name “Koryo”. The founder-king Wang Kon named his country Koryo, having inherited the name “Koguryo”, which had been a powerful kingdom. Therefore, Korea means “Koryo” as well as “Koguryo”. Today Korea has become the only name representing the entire Korean nation and its history.

After the downfall of Koryo in 1392, the Ri dynasty (1392–1905) was founded, the capital was moved to Hanyang (present-day Seoul) and Kaesong was reduced to a regional city. But Kaesong continued to maintain its importance as a city next to Hanyang. During Japanese colonial rule (1905–1945), the administrative system and urban structure of Kaesong underwent a change. After the liberation of the country, Korea was divided into north and south, and Kaesong became part of South Korea. In 1951, during the Korean War (1950–1953), Kaesong became part of the territory of the DPR Korea. Since 2003 it has been part of North Hwanghae Province.

The nominated property represents the history and culture of Koryo, which constitutes an important stage in the cultural development of the Korean Peninsula and the Far East.
2 (a) **Description of Property**

2 (a)-1 **Manwoldae and Kaesong Chomsongdae**

2(a)-1-1 **Manwoldae (Site of the Royal Palace of Koryo)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location: Songak-dong, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Year of construction: Constructed in 919. Reconstructed and expanded in early 11th century. Reconstructed between 1132 and 1138 and between late 12th century and early 13th century, respectively.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordinates: 37° 59’ 01” North, 126° 32’ 27” East</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Map 4: Location of Manwoldae
Map 5: Core zone of Manwoldae
Manwoldae\(^9\) is the site of the royal palace of Koryo that existed between AD 919 and 1361. It is situated at the southern foot of Mt. Songak northwest of Kaesong. The superstructures of the palace complex were burnt down in 1361 during a foreign invasion. Now only the archaeological remains of the stone foundations of the complex exist.

Ryong Gon, father of the founder-king Wang Kon of Koryo, built his house on this site following the advice of Toson (827-898), a famous monk and geomancer, who predicted that if Ryong Gon built his house at this site, a king who would unify the country would be born there. After he founded Koryo and became its king as Toson had predicted, Wang Kon built his royal palace at the site of his house.

No records remain of how the royal palace was built. But in view of the fact that the names and locations of the palace buildings recorded in the travelogue *Sonhwabongsa-koryodogyong*, written by So Gung, a member of a delegation which had been to Koryo from North Song\(^10\) in China in the 12th century, largely coincide with the present layout of the palace, one can guess that the construction of a palace of the present size had been finished before the 12th century.

That Manwoldae was chosen as the best site by a famous geomancer was related to geomancy (풍수, *fengshui*, 風水), which was commonly practiced on the Korean Peninsula at that time. The most prevalent theory of geomancy was the theory of the Four Guardian Mountains. It asserted that a place with mountains on all sides and water (river) in the south is the best place to live, as water and wind are gentle here, and the place guarantees happiness and a bright future for the family and its offspring (see Figure 1). A prerequisite of the theory was that none of the four mountains must be missing, they must be balanced relative to one another, and they must look like enfolding the site, not standing against it. Geomancy served as the basic principle in designing not only the royal palace but also the royal tombs and even ordinary structures.

---

\(^9\) The word *Manwoldae* originated during the Ri dynasty, and later the word denoted the site of the royal palace.

\(^10\) A state in China from 960 to 1126
2. DESCRIPTION

Manwoldae satisfied all the requirements of the theory of the Four Guardian Mountains. Mt. Songak, the Jusan\(^\text{11}\) in the theory, stands in the north of Manwoldae. Legend has it that the mountain roared when Wang Kon was being born. After the founding of Koryo, Mt. Songak became the spiritual symbol of the local people, and it has been said in Kaesong since then that “when Mt. Songak roars, a great man is born in Kaesong”. Mts. Janam, Jine and Jujak surround Manwoldae as if guarding the royal palace, inside of which the Kwangmyong Stream, originating on Mt. Songak, flows from northwest to southeast. From this place the royal palace commanded a bird’s-eye view of the city, demonstrating its splendor.

The total area of the site is 390,000 m\(^2\). In front of the royal palace were gates in the order of Changhap, Sinbong and Sungphyong Gates. The halls were divided into central, western and eastern groups of buildings respectively (see Map 6).

\(^{11}\) A typical mountain, which, according to the theory of geomancy, incarnates the luck of an area.
2. DESCRIPTION

Map 6: Layout of different groups of buildings in Manwoldae
2. DESCRIPTION

Central Group of Buildings

This group consists of three large halls and subsidiary structures. They were built on an elevation, in other words, they were built on a high natural terrain; this means the site was not levelled when the royal palace was built. Therefore, the site of the group is elevated compared to those of the other groups. In the halls of this group, major national functions, morning gatherings and receptions of foreign guests were held and major national events discussed, such as war.

Nearly the whole appearance of the site of the group has already been revealed through unearthing.

In the forefront of the group is a large terrace, 60 m long and 7.8 m high. At the terrace are four Great Staircases, each with 33 stairs. The number of stairs symbolizes that the royal palace stands above the Trayastrimśa Heaven (Thirty-three Heaven) \(^{12}\) mentioned in Buddhism.

The site of Hoegyong Hall, the major hall, is on these staircases. The hall, measuring nine bays (39.16 m) at the front by four bays (16.73 m) at the side, was the largest structure with side buildings attached in Manwoldae.

Figure 3: Four Great Staircases before the site of Hoegyong Hall

So Gung, an envoy of North Song who visited the Royal Palace of Koryo in the 12\(^{th}\) century, described the splendour of the Hoegyong Hall as follows in his travelogue: “It was not only great in its size but

\(^{12}\)Heaven of the Thirty-Three Gods, second of the six heavens of the world of desire in Buddhism.
the railings were varnished with red lacquer and decorated with bronze flowers. So the pattern and colouring was splendid, and the hall was outstanding.”

In front of the hall was a yard where state officials gathered every morning, and corridors surrounded the hall and the yard.

At the back of the Hoegyong Hall is the site of the Janghwa Hall. Comprised of both a front and a back structure, which were connected, the hall was surrounded by corridors. Royal treasures were kept in the eastern and western corridors. At the back of the site of the Janghwa Hall, there were other structures, including the Wondok Hall, but only the site of the Wondok Hall still remains, while the sites to its north were destroyed.

Outside the western corridor of the Hoegyong Hall, there still remains the site of the Rimchon Pavilion, where books of the royal palace were kept.

**Western Group of Buildings**

On a lower site west of the site of the central group of buildings, there is the site of the western group of buildings. There were twenty palace buildings. The Kondok Hall was next to the Hoegyong Hall in importance. The successive kings of Koryo administered the country usually in this hall, except for the holding of major functions and ceremonies and the conducting of national affairs. Other halls here included Sonjong (pyonjon\(^{13}\)), Junggwang (pyonjon), Yonyong (pyonjon), Jangryong (pyonjon), Jasu (pyonjon), Manryong (chimjon\(^{14}\)) and others as well as shrines and temples.

Most of the structures are yet to be unearthed; only some have been discovered so far, and some are thought to be shrines and temples. The unearthed sites are now in the process of being confirmed.

---

\(^{13}\) Palace for king’s daily life

\(^{14}\) Palace for king’s bedroom
2. DESCRIPTION

Eastern Group of Buildings

The eastern group is situated on a lower site east of the site of the central group of buildings. According to Sonhwabongsa-Koryodogyong, there were the Suchun Palace\(^\text{15}\) with Chundok, Wonin and Yukdok Gates, Suchun and Konmyong Halls and several other structures. In addition to these, there were several gardens, ponds, pavilions and temples.

A detailed archaeological survey of the eastern group of buildings is yet to be carried out.

According to the materials unearthed and to records, the structures in the royal palace were wooden ones, in a traditional architectural form, and were splendid and beautiful as was appropriate to a royal palace. The roofs were covered with blue-glazed tiles, the buildings were decorated with gold, silver, bronze and other metal materials, and various lacquer colours added to their splendour. To take the present site of the royal palace as an example, the platform was built with many granite slabs finely processed one by one, and the cornerstones were built to look weighty with finely processed stones.

---

\(^{15}\) Palace where Crown Prince lived
2. DESCRIPTION

When building royal palaces in East Asia, it was a general principle to first form the axis and to distribute other structures at both sides of the axis symmetrically, but the design of the royal palace of Koryo is characterised by asymmetry, far from the stereotype. This was because the theory of geomancy was applied in the design of the royal palace. According to the *Koryosa*\(^{16}\) and other historical records, geomancers advised at the time of the building of the royal palace that it be built without damaging the natural terrain lest the “spirit of the land” be damaged. Therefore, the palace was built on natural terrain, not on a levelled site, and all the structures were situated on various types of natural terrain. This is a major feature of the royal palace of Koryo, one that embodied the worship of geomancy.

The royal palaces of Koryo and Koguryo are identical in that they were situated on the slopes of high mountains in the south. But the royal palace of Koryo is different from that of Koguryo in that its structures were placed asymmetrically, a unique feature in the design of royal palaces in East Asia.

---

\(^{16}\) Book that describes the history of Koryo in detail. It was published in 1451, in the early days of the Ri dynasty.
Figure 5: Sites of palace buildings in central group of buildings, Manwoldae

Site of Janghwa Hall, Manwoldae

Site of Hoegyong Hall, Manwoldae
2. DESCRIPTION

NOMINATION

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

Figure 6: Sites of gates in Manwoldae

Site of the Gate to Hoegyong Hall, Manwoldae

1. Foundation stone
2. Terrace
3. Stairs

Site of Changhap Gate, Manwoldae

Site of Sinbong Gate, Manwoldae
2(a)-1-2  *Kaesong Chomsongdae*

Location: Songak-dong, Kaesong, North Hwanghae Province

Year of construction: Early days of Koryo (early 10th century)

Coordinates: 37° 59’ 13” North, 126° 32’ 27’’ East

**Map 7: Location of Kaesong Chomsongdae**
2. DESCRIPTION

NOMINATION

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

Map 8: Core zone of Kaesong Chomsongdae
Kaesong Chomsongdae was an observatory west of Manwoldae, where astronomical and meteorological surveys were conducted. The structure was destroyed after the ruin of Koryo, and only its platform remains.

Figure 7: Remains of Kaesong Chomsongdae

Following is the layout of the platform: Five stone columns were set up on the four corners and at the centre; these columns were linked by five beams; and six flagstones were placed above them to form the upper part of the platform. The platform is 2.8 m high and 2.6 m wide. The linking parts of the beams were grooved and iron plates were inserted into them so that the parts would not deform. The building material was granite.

Figure 8: Architectural structure of Kaesong Chomsongdae
Recently, materials guessed to be columns have been found near Kaesong Chomsongdae. Specialists assume, on the basis of the survey, that there had been a two-storey structure on the platform.

The historical records of the days of the Ri dynasty, such as Koryosa and Junggyongji, call it an observatory of Koryo. Koryosa, insisting that it is an astronomical relic of the days of Koryo, reads: “Chomsongdae is west of the Manwoldae. It looks like a squared watchtower made of stone columns, seven chok on each side and eight chok high. In the old days there was an apparatus for surveying the heavens, but now it is covered heavily with ivy and is antique-looking.”

Figure 9: “Manwol Hoego” (1612)

---

17 Chok was a unit of measurement for length, width and height in the East. One chok corresponded to about 30 centimetres in Korea, but this differed by country and by period.
Manwol Hoego (1612), a painting from the days of the Ri dynasty, describes Kaesong Chomsongdae as being beside the site of the royal palace of Koryo at Manwoldae, as it is now (see Figure 9).

*Koryosa* has handed down to us the results of the astronomical and meteorological surveys undertaken from the first days of Koryo until its last days. There is no record of the apparatus installed there at that time and of the survey methods, but judging by the results of the survey, it is clear that Kaesong Chomsongdae was used not only for surveying the movements of celestial bodies and peculiar natural phenomena but also for telling the time, measuring precipitation and forecasting the weather.

Koryo attached importance to astronomical surveys not only for agriculture and other economic activities but also from a superstitious point of view that whether governance was good or not was reflected in the change of celestial bodies. Therefore, apparatuses for astronomical surveys and the body that managed them were situated near the royal palace to carry out regular astronomical surveys.

Archaeological surveys and the study of Kaesong Chomsongdae and its surroundings are planned to be intensified in the future together with the study of Manwoldae.

---

*Kaesong Chomsongdae, together with its counterpart in Kyongju*, is regarded as the oldest structure for astronomical surveys in the world.

---

18 **Kyongju** was the capital of the Silla dynasty (57 BC – 935 AD), and the astronomical observatory was built there in the first half of the 7th century BC.
Figure 10: Kaesong Chomsongdae
2. DESCRIPTION

2 (a)-2 Kaesong Walls

Location: Kaesong, North Hwanghae Province

Year of construction: Palocham Wall in 896, Outer Wall in 1009–1029, Inner Wall 1391–1393

Coordinates: 37° 56’ 50”, 38° 00’ 10”, 37° 58’ 42” and 37° 58’ 04” North,

126° 32’ 27”, 126° 33’ 00”, 126° 35’ 31” and 126° 31’ 28” East

Map 9: Location of Kaesong Walls
Map 10: Core zone of Mausoleum of Kaesong Walls
Map 10-1: Part of Kaesong Walls
Map 10-2: Part of Kaesong Walls
Map 10-3: Part of Kaesong Walls
Map 10-4: Part of Kaesong Walls
Map 10-5: Part of Kaesong Walls
Map 10-6: Part of Kaesong Walls
Map 10-7: Part of Kaesong Walls
Map 10-8: Part of Kaesong Walls
Map 10-9: Part of Kaesong Walls
Map 10-10: Part of Kaesong Walls
The Kaesong Walls were the city wall during the Koryo dynasty. They stretch through the urban area and over the surrounding mountains. Originally, the Kaesong Walls were comprised of four walls, including the Imperial Wall, the Palace Wall, the Outer Wall and the Inner Wall. The Palace Wall encircled the royal palace and the Imperial Wall enclosed both the Palace Wall and major government offices, which are mostly lost today. There remain significant parts of the Outer Wall, the Inner Wall and Palocham Wall, which was built before Koryo and became the prototype of the Kaesong Walls.

**Outer Wall**

This wall was constructed in 1009–1029, during the reign of Hyonjong, 8th king of Koryo, at the suggestion of Kang Gam Chan, a famous general of Koryo. The wall was built on surrounding mountains and flatland of the capital by connecting Mts. Songak, Jine, Puhung, Ryongsu and Tokam Peak. Its northern, eastern, western and northwestern parts are on mountains, while its southeastern part is on flatland. Some lengths were made of stones, and others of earth. According to Koryosa, it was nearly 23 km long and had 25 gates (see Table 5).

**Table 5: Gates of the Outer Wall in Kaesong (based on Koryosa)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Sungin</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Thongdok</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>Anhwa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Songi</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>Pothae</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Songdo (Pukso)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Jangphae</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Sonui</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Tokphung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Kwangdok</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Sanye</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>Anjong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Toksan</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>Yongphyong (Nulli)</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>Yongpyong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Hoebin</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Sonam</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Aenggye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Songye</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>Jaan (Pukchang)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Konbok</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Thaean</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>Changsin</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Hongin</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>Ryongchang(Tanhyon)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The wall has been preserved in relatively good shape. No gate remains intact; lower parts of the gates and gateways have only survived for three gates - Pukchang, Pukso and Nulli.
2. DESCRIPTION

Inner Wall

As it was thought that the Outer Wall was too large to defend Kaeson from the frequent foreign invasions, the Inner Wall was built in the last days of Koryo to surround some area inside the Outer Wall, including the Palace and the Imperial Walls. Its construction was discussed for a long time, beginning in the first half of the 14th century; the project started in 1391 and was completed in 1393, the year after the founding of the Ri dynasty. Built with stones, it was 11.2 km long and had five gates - Pukso\(^9\), Jinon, Tongdae, Namdae and Soso.

The eastern and southern sections have been lost, but some sections of the northern and southwestern parts of the wall still remain. The gates have been lost, except the Namdae Gate (the Namdae Gate is treated separately as an individual object in this document).

Palocham Wall

It was built in 894 before the foundation of Koryo. A general (called Wang Kon) of Thaebong State led the construction of the Palocham Wall; he later became the founder-king of Koryo. When he moved the capital to Kaeson in 919, he built the Imperial Wall and the Palace Wall on the southern

---

\(^9\) Also the Pukso Gate of the Outer Wall, in other words, it served as a gate for the Inner Wall, as well as for the Outer Wall.
part of the Palocham Wall. Today it remains with some northern parts of the eastern wall, and with its northern wall and western wall making the Outer Wall.

Building the Kaesong Walls was done in different ways according to material and location. Stone walls were built by erecting only their outer face in the mountainous parts but both faces on the mountain ridges and on the plain. The material was granite, which is abundant in Kaesong. Earthen walls were built on the lower parts of the mountain ridges and the plain by making a frame with stones and piling earth on it. During the Koryo period, the form of the gateways developed from the original right-angled gateway to an arched one.

The Pang-Ri system\(^{20}\) in Kaesong is characterized by free arrangement of Pang and Ri according to the geomantic principles and geographical conditions, unlike the symmetrical and rectangular pattern in the capitals of the preceding states. It is far from the stereotypical pattern for town planning in East Asia. This planning is associated with the opening of the medieval towns, i.e. it is the reflection of a law-governed historical course that towns were being opened along with the economic and commercial development in the medieval states. Combined with the geomantic principles, the opening of Kaesong was unique to the Korean Peninsula.

It is planned to survey and unearth the wall parts and some lost gates in the near future.

---

\(^{20}\) Urban system began during the Han and Tang dynasties of China. The city was divided regularly in a chequered pattern with five main bu (districts), many pang in every bu and many ri in every pang, which were administrative units for running the city and controlling the citizens. Inside the walls of Changan, the capital of Tang, every pang and ri were surrounded by walls and could be entered only through gates.
2. DESCRIPTION

Map 11: Layout of Kaesong Walls

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
2 (a)-3 Kaesong Namdae Gate

Location: Pukan-dong, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province
Year of construction: 1391~1393
Coordinates: 37° 58' 09” North, 126° 33' 29” East

Map 12: Location of Kaesong Namdae Gate
Map 13: Core zone of Kaesong Namdae Gate

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
2. DESCRIPTION

The Kaesong Namdae Gate was a southern gate of the Inner Wall of Kaesong Walls. It is now situated at an intersection in the central part of Kaesong. Built in 1393 during the construction of the Inner Wall, it still preserves its original appearance.

Figure 12: Kaesong Namdae Gate

Its location was the central part of the city during the Koryo dynasty. Two trunk roads running from east to west and from south to north intersected just in front of the gate. The road running from south to north was linked to the Kwanghwa Gate, the main gate of the Imperial Wall.

The stone platform of the Kaesong Namdae Gate is built from finely processed, large granite slabs, and at the centre of the platform is a gateway in the arched form, a form which came into being during the Koryo dynasty. A one-storied pavilion with a gabled roof stands on the platform. Being three bays at the front and two bays at the side, the pavilion looks simple and yet weighty.

Though it is the main south gate of the city wall, it conveys the simple form of a one-storied gatehouse. This is because geomancy was applied to it; the geomancers advised that, following the views of geomancy and the principles of the Yin-Yang Five Natural Elements21, to harmonize with the special topography of Kaesong there be no high buildings in the capital as it was surrounded by high mountains.

21 Philosophy on interaction of Yin and Yang, and the Five Natural Elements water, wood, metal, fire and earth
Overall, the gate is well balanced and proportionate architecturally, and looks solemn and majestic. It was the largest and best gate of the Inner Wall, all of which were built at the same time.

Hanging on the pavilion now is the bell from the Yonbok Temple, one of the five major bells in Korea. The bell was manufactured in 1346, during the Koryo dynasty, and hung at the Yonbok Temple. In 1563, during the Ri dynasty, the temple burned down, and the bell was moved to the gate. The bell tolled the passage of hours until the early 1900s.

The Namdae Gate is the oldest of all the long-standing gates on the Korean Peninsula, and represents gate building in the last days of Koryo and the early days of the Ri dynasty.

---

22 Yonbok Temple bell in Kaesong, Sangwon Temple bell in Phyongchang, Pongdok Temple bell in Kyongju, Songgo Temple bell in Chonan, and Sangwon Temple bell in Jophyong
2. DESCRIPTION

Figure 13: Kaesong Namdae Gate
2 (a)-4  Koryo Songgyungwan

Location: Pangjik-dong, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province
Year of Construction: 1367
Coordinates: 37° 59’ 19” North, 126° 34’ 22” East

Map 14: Location of Koryo Songgyungwan
2. DESCRIPTION

Map 15: Core zone of Koryo Songgyungwan

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
Koryo Songgyungwan was Kukhak, the highest state educational institution for training officials of the central government in the period of the Koryo dynasty. It was similar to a present public university.

It is situated around 2.5 km east of Manwoldae. The site is thick with trees, picturesque and cozy. At first, there was an auxiliary royal palace, called the Taemyong Palace, during the reign of Munjong (from 1047 to 1083), the 11th king of Koryo. Later, it became a guesthouse for foreigners, and from 1089, it was used as a building of Kukjagam. In 1308, Kukjagam developed into Songgyungwan, and the structure was expanded to the present size in 1367. The Doctrines of Zhu Xi established in China in the 12th century came into the country in the late days of Koryo and nation-wide attention was paid to the Confucian education, which was directly reflected in the expansion of Koryo Songgyungwan.

Figure 14: General view of Koryo Songgyungwan

---

23 National educational institution of Koryo built in 992, and predecessor of Songgyungwan. First situated near the Hoebin Gate in the southern part of Kaesong.
During the Koryo dynasty, Songgyungwan taught politics, law, mathematics and calligraphy. Students were hundreds in number. After the collapse of Koryo, it was used as Hyangkyo.24

Koryo Songgyungwan consists of 17 structures. The whole area is surrounded by a fence, and its ground plan is rectangular, elongated from north to south. There is a gate in the form of a triple gate in the south. The area inside the fence is divided into a lecture-hall compound, a shrine compound and an auxiliary compound. The compounds are divided one another by fences and gates.

**Lecture-hall Compound**

This is an area where students studied. At the northern centre of the compound is the Myongryun Hall, a lecture hall, of five bays (19.3 m) at the front by two bays (9.34 m) at the side. On the east is Hyangsil25 and on the west is Jongyong House.26 There are East and West Dormitories for students facing each other with a yard in between in front of the lecture hall. At the back of the hall, there is a gate in the form of a triple gate leading to the shrine compound.

---

24 It was an institution of Confucian education that the state built in every village during the Koryo and Ri dynasties.
25 Structure for storing incense.
26 Structure for storing Confucian scriptures.
2. DESCRIPTION

Shrine Compound

This is an area where memorial services for famous Confucian scholars were held. The Taesong Hall is situated in the northern centre of the area. It measures five bays (14.69 m) at the front by three bays (9.75 m) at the side. Memorial rites for Confucius, founder of Confucianism, were held in the hall. The Eastern Shrine and Western Shrine stand face to face before the hall. Memorial services for famous Korean and Chinese Confucian scholars were held in these buildings.

The Kyesong Shrine built in 1740, during the Ri dynasty, stands northwest of Taesong Hall.

Auxiliary Compound

The Auxiliary Compound is situated west of the above-mentioned two compounds. There are several structures, including ones for storing implements for memorial services and others for making preparations for memorial services.

On the west side of Songgyungwan, pagodas, monuments, Buddhist images, stone lanterns, stupas and other stone objects of the days of Koryo, which were moved there from various places in Kaesong, are on display in the open air.

The building work of Songgyungwan demonstrates the characteristics of a Confucian educational institution. The overall plane lay-out is quite systematic, and the architectural form and painting of every structure is not gorgeous, but simple.

Now, it is preserved as a historical monument and also functions as the Koryo Museum. The plan is for the museum to be moved to another place and the interior of the Taesong Hall restored to its original state.

Songgyungwan, as a unique Kukhak of Koryo, is the oldest among the existing state educational institutions in the history of Korea.
Figure 16: Koryo Songgyungwan

1. Taesong Hall
2. East shrine
3. West shrine
4. Kyewong Shrine
5. Inner triple gate
6. Myongryun Hall
7. East dormitory
8. West dormitory
9. Hyangsil
10. Jongvong House
11. Outer triple gate
12. Auxiliary compound

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
2. DESCRIPTION

Figure 17: Myongryun Hall, Koryo Songgyungwan

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
2. DESCRIPTION

Figure 18: East dormitory, Koryo Songgyungwan

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

2. DESCRIPTION

NOMINATION

Figure 19: Taesong Hall, Koryo Songgyungwan
2 (a)-5 Sungyang Sowon

Location: Sonjuk-dong, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province
Year of construction: Koryo days
Coordinates: 37° 58′ 19″ North, 126° 33′ 45″ East

Map 16: Location of Sungyang Sowon
2. DESCRIPTION

Map 17: Core zone of Sungyang Sowon
Sungyang Sowon had been a house owned by Jong Mong Ju (1337–1392), a minister of the government in the last days of Koryo. As a loyal subject, he was representative of the last days of Koryo. He was murdered by the henchmen of Ri Song Gye who were scheming to overthrow the Koryo court. From 1573, Sungyang Sowon was used as a shrine for holding memorial services for Jong Mong Ju, and as a sowon27 as well. It is situated at the southeastern foot of Mt. Janam, 500 m east of the Kaesong Namdae Gate, and it still retains its original appearance. A little way west of here is Sonjuk Bridge which became famous as Jong Mong Ju, a faithful official of Koryo, was killed on it.

When this building became a sowon during the Ri dynasty, it was changed a little. A north-to-south rectangular fence surrounds it, with the main gate in the form of a triple gate in the southern part of the fence. Sungyang Sowon is divided into a lecture-hall compound in the south and a shrine compound in the north. The two compounds are divided by a fence and gates.

**Lecture-hall Compound**

The Lecture-hall Compound is where students studied. The compound has three terraces. At the centre of the third terrace, the highest part, stands a Hall. The hall measures five bays (12.78 m) at the front by three bays (6.4 m) at the side. On the sides of the second terrace are the East and West Dormitories

---

27 Private school run by knowledgeable scholars to give a Confucian education.
of the students. At the back of the hall are three steeply ascending staircases, which lead to the gate to the shrine compound.

Shrine Compound

In the Shrine Compound there is a shrine with two rooms where memorial services for Jong Mong Ju and other famous Confucian scholars were held. It measures four bays (9.43m) at the front by two bays (4.83m) at the side. A portrait of Jong Mong Ju was hung in the western room. The memorial tablets of five famous Confucian scholars of the days of the Koryo and Ri dynasties — U Hyon Bo, So Kyong Dok, Kim Sang Hon, Kim Yuk and Jo Ik—with that of Jong Mong Ju at the centre were kept in the eastern room for memorial rites. The interior of the shrine still retains its original appearance.

Figure 21: Portrait of Jong Mong Ju in the west room of shrine
Sowon began to be set up from 1542 on the Korean Peninsula. Built in the early days of Koryo, Sungyang Sowon is one of the oldest of its kind in Korea which are still preserved. This site is directly associated with Jong Mong Ju, an important figure in the final days of the Koryo period.
2. DESCRIPTION

Figure 23: Sungyang Sowon

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
Figure 24: Lecture hall and shrine, Sungyang Sowon
2 (a)-6 Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments

Location: Sonjuk-dong, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province

Year of construction: Early days of Koryo for Sonjuk (correct year not confirmed)

Phyochung Monuments --north monument: 1740, south monument: 1872

Coordinates: 37° 58’ 26” North, 126° 34’ 04” East
2. DESCRIPTION

Map 19: Core zone of Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
Sonjuk Bridge was used from the early days of Koryo. The bridge became famous after Jong Mong Ju, a government minister of Koryo and faithful to the country, was murdered on the bridge. The Phyochung Monuments were built by the visiting kings of the Ri dynasty in honour of Jong Mong Ju’s loyalty. The bridge and monuments are situated side-by-side about 500 m east of Sungyang Sowon, Jong Mong Ju’s residence.

Figure 25: Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments

2(a)-6-1 Sonjuk Bridge

The original name of the bridge was Sonji. It was renamed Sonjuk after a dramatic incident in the last days of Koryo. Sungyang Sowon, Jong Mong Ju’s residence, was located west of the bridge, and Mokchong Hall, residence of the founder-king of the Ri dynasty, Ri Song Gye, east of the bridge. Both were leaders of the reformists, who, discontent with the Buddhist politics of Koryo, advocated reform by means of Confucianism. However, Ri Song Gye tried to make use of the forces that advocated Confucianism so as to usurp power. Jong Mong Ju was opposed to it. Afraid of Jong Mong Ju, Ri Song Gye had him beaten to death on Sonji Bridge on his way back home after a visit to the Mokchong Hall. Legend has it that later a bamboo, symbolic of fidelity, began to grow on the bridge. From that time, the bridge began to be called Sonjuk (juk means bamboo in Korean).

The bridge is built of granite, with a structure of stone piers, beams placed on the piers, and flat stone slabs between the beams. There are railings at both edges of the bridge, installed in 1780. Measuring 8.35 m long and 3.36 m wide, the bridge is not large.
Near the bridge, there are several monuments from the days of the Ri dynasty, made to commemorate Jong Mong Ju’s loyalty for posterity. Just beside the bridge, there is another bridge, built in 1780 to alleviate the traffic on Sonjuk Bridge; a monument called Upbi (built in 1641) set up in memory of Jong Mong Ju’s loyalty; two monuments (built in 1797 and 1824, respectively) set up in honour of Kim Gyong Jo who had been murdered together with Jong Mong Ju; the Hama Monument (notice stone requiring riders to dismount); a monument commemorating Sonjuk Bridge inscribed with the handwriting of Han Sok Bong (1543–1605), a famous calligrapher of the Ri dynasty; and a monument commemorating the site of the house of Song Yo Wan, an official of Koryo, who, impressed by Jong Mong Ju’s loyalty, took care of Jong Mong Ju’s corpse.

2(a)-6-2  Phyochung Monuments

Phyochung Monuments are situated west of Sonjuk Bridge, consisting of two monuments housed in a pavilion and surrounded by a fence. At the centre of the eastern part of the fence there is a gate in the form of a triple gate.

In the pavilion, the two monuments stand in the south and north, respectively. The northern one was set up in 1740, during the reign of the 21st king of the Ri dynasty, Yongjo (1725–1776), and the southern one in 1872, during the reign of the 26th King of the Ri dynasty, Kojong (1864–1907).

The monuments consist of turtle-shaped plinths, bodies and heads. Large pieces of granite weighing over 10 tons were finely worked into the plinths. The bodies were made from black marble; the northern one is 3.17 m high and 0.94 m wide, and the southern one is 3.58 m high and 0.94 m wide. The granite heads look like gabled roofs. Carved in bold relief on the lower parts are four dragons rearing up. Their size and artistic representation make them one of the best of the remaining monuments in Korea.

The poem composed by King Yongjo and inscribed on the northern monument reads that the loyalty and morality cherished by Jong Mong Ju, a minister of the government in the last days of Koryo who possessed integrity “as high as a soaring mountain”, would be handed down to posterity, while the poem by King Kojong and inscribed on the southern monument reads that Jong Mong Ju’s loyalty and integrity will shine all over the universe and that Korea’s morality is carried forward until today thanks to Jong Mong Ju.

28 Phyochung means singing the praises of loyalty and integrity.
Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments are historical monuments directly associated with a political event of the last days of Koryo, and the Phyochung Monuments are one of the best representative monuments of the Ri dynasty.

Figure 26: Sonjuk Bridge

Figure 27: Pavilion for Phyochung Monuments
Figure 28: Phyochung Monuments
2. DESCRIPTION

Figure 29: Sonjuk Bridge

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
2 (a)-7  **Mausoleum of King Wang Kon**

Location: Haeson-ri, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province

Year of Construction: 943

Coordinates: 37° 58’ 54” North, 126° 30’ 29” East

Map 20: Location of Mausoleum of King Wang Kon
Map 21: Core zone of Mausoleum of King Wang Kon
2. DESCRIPTION

The Mausoleum of King Wang Kon is the tomb of Wang Kon, the founder-king of Koryo. Wang Kon founded Koryo at the age of 41, and ruled the country for 25 years. When he died at the age of 67, he was buried here. The tomb is situated at the southern foot of Mt. Mansu, a branch of Mt. Songak, 3 km west of Manwoldae. Its eastern, western and northern sides are surrounded by Mt. Mansu, and the southern side faces a small plain.

Figure 30: Distant view of Mausoleum of King Wang Kon

According to Koryogodojing (early 19th century by Han Jae Ryom) and Junggyongji, To Son, a famous geomancer who selected the site for a house for Wang Kon, told the king that if he and his offspring were buried here after death, the family would prosper in posterity. At present, 18 tombs, or 30% of the royal tombs of Koryo, are found in this area. The single burial chamber of the Mausoleum is 3.18 m south to north, 3.25 m east to west, and 2.2 m high. It is roofed by a plain stone.

The east, west and north walls and the ceiling are plastered with lime and then painted: a blue dragon, a Japanese apricot tree and bamboo on the east wall; a white tiger, a pine tree and a Japanese apricot tree on the west wall; a snake and a turtle (though most parts are erased) on the north wall; and constellations on the ceiling.

The chamber is covered with earth, and screen stone slabs with the twelve zodiac figures in relief surround the earthen mound. Around the screen slabs, there are railings, stone tigers, stone pillars, a
2. DESCRIPTION

...stone table, and a stone lantern. On both sides of the two staircases going up to the mound are the statues of four military and civil officials, respectively.

Figure 31: General view of Mausoleum of King Wang Kon

Standing in the shrine area are the Monument to the Reconstruction of the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon, founder of Koryo, set up in 1992, and a marker of the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon and a monument to its repair set up in 1867.

Building the burial chamber with stones and drawing four deities on its walls was started during the Koryo dynasty. Distributing stone sculptures around a tomb is a tradition created during the Silla dynasty, an expression of the influence of the Tang dynasty of China.

The tomb has been repaired several times. Whenever there was a foreign invasion, the coffins were removed from the royal tombs to safe places and then brought to their original tombs after the invasion was repulsed. The Ri dynasty took measures on seven occasions to preserve the royal tombs of Koryo. In the middle of the 18th century, during the reign of King Yongjo, the stone structures and pavilions at Wang Kon’s tomb were renovated on a large scale. When the royal tombs of Koryo were being repaired in 1857, houses were set up at Wang Kon’s tomb to keep the monuments safe. In the course of these projects, the direction of the screen slabs and stone railings became changed and some stone structures assumed the style of the Ri dynasty. In 1992, the mound was enlarged and the stone structures were rebuilt, leading to their present appearance.
2. DESCRIPTION

Figure 32: Stele pavilions at Mausoleum of King Wang Kon
Figure 33: Mausoleum of King Wang Kon

1. Mound
2. Terrace
3. Railing post
4. Railing
5. Burial chamber
6. Stone pillar
7. Stone lantern
8. Stone tiger
9. Statue of civil official
10. Statue of military official
11. Stairs
12. Foundation stone
13. Stone table

Gate to the tomb
Shrine
Pavilion for a monument
Figure 34: Burial chamber of Mausoleum of King Wang Kon
2. DESCRIPTION

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

Figure 35: Gate and shrine at Mausoleum of King Wang Kon
2. DESCRIPTION

2 (a)-8  Seven Tombs Cluster

Location: Haeson-ri, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province

Year of construction: 13th–14th century

Coordinates: 37° 59’ 13” and 37° 59’ 18” North, 126° 30’ 26”, 126° 30’ 04” East

Map 22: Location of Seven Tombs Cluster
2. DESCRIPTION

Map 23: Core zone of Seven Tombs Cluster

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
The seven tombs are located in a series on a ridge with a valley in front of them. From their architecture, it is assumed that these are royal tombs although the identity of the persons buried there could not be ascertained. On top of the ridge behind the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon, one can find across a valley a long ridge of Mt. Mansu running east to west in parallel with the valley. On the southern ridge there are the seven tombs. The tombs are given numbers in the order of their location from west to east. Tomb No.1 is believed to have been built in the 12th – 13th century, and the others are believed to have been built after the 13th century.

The tombs have been robbed several times. The tombs were unearthed as follows: Tomb No.4 (1978), Tombs No.1 and No.2 (1991), and Tomb No.6 (1993). The unearthed tombs have a stone coffin chamber, and a lime-plastered flat ceiling. Drawn on the ceiling of Tomb No.7 is a celestial design.

The mounds are girded with dodecagonal screen slabs, stone railings and stone animals. In front of the mounds are stone tables, stone pillars, stone lanterns, stone animals and stone figures. Some stone structures were lost or transformed in the process of their repair. The present state is given in Table 6.

It is planned to survey the state of the structures, repair the lost or damaged ones, and build up the surroundings.

The Seven Tombs Cluster is testimony to the evolution of the design of the royal tombs of Koryo.
### Table 6: Site information of Seven Tombs Cluster

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Tomb No.1</th>
<th>Tomb No.2</th>
<th>Tomb No.3</th>
<th>Tomb No.4</th>
<th>Tomb No.5</th>
<th>Tomb No.6</th>
<th>Tomb No.7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tomb area</td>
<td>3 terraces</td>
<td>3 terraces</td>
<td>3 terraces</td>
<td>3 terraces</td>
<td>3 terraces</td>
<td>3 terraces</td>
<td>3 terraces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burial chamber structure</td>
<td>Single chamber, flat ceiling</td>
<td>Single chamber, flat ceiling, coffin support</td>
<td>Single chamber, flat ceiling, coffin support</td>
<td>Single chamber, flat ceiling</td>
<td>Single chamber, flat ceiling</td>
<td>Single chamber, flat ceiling</td>
<td>Single chamber, flat ceiling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mural</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Celestial distribution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen slab</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
<td>Twelve-angled, twelve zodiac figures</td>
<td>Twelve-angled, twelve zodiac figures</td>
<td>Nearly round</td>
<td>Twelve-angled, twelve zodiac figures</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North-South orientation</td>
<td>Screen slab corner</td>
<td>Screen slab corner</td>
<td>Screen slab corner</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>Screen slab corner</td>
<td>Screen slab corner</td>
<td>Screen slab corner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone railing</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone animal</td>
<td>Six tigers</td>
<td>Three tigers</td>
<td>Two tigers, Two sheep</td>
<td>Two tigers, Two sheep</td>
<td>Two tigers</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone pillar</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Rectangular</td>
<td>Octagonal</td>
<td>Quadrangular Pyramid</td>
<td>Rectangular</td>
<td>Rectangular</td>
<td>Rectangular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone lantern</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Rectangular</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>rectangular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone table</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone image</td>
<td>Two civil officials</td>
<td>Two civil and two military officials</td>
<td>Four civil officials</td>
<td>Two civil officials</td>
<td>Four civil and two military officials</td>
<td>Four civil officials</td>
<td>Two civil officials and two military officials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site of shrine</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relics</td>
<td>Five celadons</td>
<td>Coffin nail, pieces of ceramics, bones etc.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Pieces of ceramics</td>
<td>Jewel, coffin nail, ornaments and pieces,</td>
<td>One Buddhist image, pieces of ceramics, ornaments of coffin, coffin nail, coin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. DESCRIPTION

Figure 37: Tomb No. 1, Seven Tombs Cluster

Figure 38: Tomb No. 2, Seven Tombs Cluster
2. DESCRIPTION

Figure 39: Tomb No. 3, Seven Tombs Cluster

Figure 40: Tomb No. 4, Seven Tombs Cluster
2. DESCRIPTION

Figure 41: Tomb No. 5, Seven Tombs Cluster

Figure 42: Tomb No. 6, Seven Tombs Cluster
Figure 43: Tomb No. 7, Seven Tombs Cluster
Figure 44: Tomb No.1, Seven Tombs Cluster

1. Mound
2. Terrace
3. Railing post
4. Foundation stone
5. Tombstone
6. Stairs
7. Statue of civil official
8. Stone tiger
2. DESCRIPTION

Figure 45: Tomb No.2, Seven Tombs Cluster

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
Figure 46: Tomb No.3, Seven Tombs Cluster

1. Mound
2. Terrace
3. Railing post
4. Stairs
5. Stone table
6. Stone pillar
7. Stone lantern
8. Stone sheep
9. Statue of civil official
10. Statue of military official
2. DESCRIPTION

NOMINATION

Figure 47: Tomb No.4, Seven Tombs Cluster

1. Mound
2. Terrace
3. Stone tiger
4. Stone pillar
5. Foundation stone
6. Statue of civil official
7. Stairs
2. DESCRIPTION

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

Figure 48: Tomb No.5, Seven Tombs Cluster

1. Mound
2. Terrace
3. Railing post
4. Stone tiger
5. Tombstone
6. Stone pillar
7. Statue of civil official
8. Statue of military official
2. DESCRIPTION

Figure 49: Tomb No.6, Seven Tombs Cluster

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
Figure 50: Tomb No.7, Seven Tombs Cluster

1. Mound
2. Terrace
3. Railing post
4. Railing
5. Stone lantern
6. Stone pillar
7. Stone table
8. Stone tiger
9. Statue of civil official
10. Statue of military official
11. Stairs
12. Foundation stone

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
2. DESCRIPTION

2 (a)-9  Myongrung Cluster

Location: Haeson-ri, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province
Year of construction: Mid-14th century
Coordinates: 37° 58’45” North and 126° 30’01” East

Map 24: Location of Myongrung Cluster
2. DESCRIPTION

Map 25: Core zone of Myongrung Cluster
This cluster consists of the Myong Tomb for Chungmok (1345-1348), the 29th king of Koryo, and two other tombs around it. It has not been confirmed whose bodies were buried in the latter two tombs. King Chungmok became a king at the age of eight and died when he was 12 years old. His tomb was built the next year, and his body was buried there. In view of the form of their construction, the other two tombs are believed to have been built in the mid-14th century, too.

Figure 51: Distant view of Myongrung Cluster

The cluster is located at the foot of a mountain one km west of the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon. Myong Tomb (Tomb No.1) is in the west, and Tombs No.2 and No.3 are placed at an interval of 40 m.

Myong Tomb was unearthed in 1983. The tomb has a single burial chamber built with the flat-stone walls which retain the traces of murals, and the flat ceiling where part of a celestial design still remains.

The external structures of the three tombs are nearly the same as the other royal tombs of Koryo. Some of the stone structures around the tombs were lost or modified during early repair attempts. The tombs’ present state is given in Table 7.

It is planned to survey the interior of the tombs and build up the surroundings.
Table 7: Site information of Myongrung Cluster

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Myong Tomb (Tomb No. 1)</th>
<th>Tomb No.2</th>
<th>Tomb No.3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tomb Area</td>
<td>One terrace remained</td>
<td>Four terraces</td>
<td>Four terraces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burial chamber</td>
<td>Single chamber, flat</td>
<td>Undiscovered</td>
<td>Undiscovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ceiling</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structure</td>
<td>Celestial distribution</td>
<td>Undiscovered</td>
<td>Undiscovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen slab</td>
<td>Nearly rounded, Twelve</td>
<td>Twelve-angled, twelve</td>
<td>Twelve-angled, twelve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zodiac figures</td>
<td>zodiac figures</td>
<td>zodiac figures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North-South orientation</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>Corner of screen slabs</td>
<td>Corner of screen slabs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone railing</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone animal</td>
<td>Four tigers</td>
<td>Four tigers</td>
<td>Four tigers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone pillar</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Rectangular</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone lantern</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone table</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone image</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Two civil officials,</td>
<td>Two civil officials, two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>two military officials</td>
<td>military officials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site of the shrine</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relics</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 52: Tomb No.1, Myongrung Cluster
2. DESCRIPTION

Figure 53: Tomb No.2, Myongrung Cluster

Figure 54: Tomb No.3, Myongrung Cluster
2. DESCRIPTION

NOMINATION

Figure 55: Tombs No.1 and No.3, Myongrung Cluster

1. Mound
2. Terrace
3. Railing post
4. Railing
5. Tombstone
6. Stone pillar
7. Tomb marker
8. Stone tiger
9. Statue of civil official
10. Statue of military official
11. Stairs

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
2. DESCRIPTION

Figure 56: Tomb No.2, Myongrung Cluster

1. Mound
2. Terrace
3. Railing post
4. Railing
5. Stairs
6. Stone pillar
7. Statue of civil official
8. Statue of military official
2. DESCRIPTION

2 (a)-10 Mausoleum of King Kongmin

Location: Haeson-ri, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province
Construction Year: 1365–1372
Coordinates: 37° 58’ 47” North and 126° 28’ 30” East

Map 26: Location of Mausoleum of King Kongmin
Map 27: Core zone of Mausoleum of King Kongmin
The tombs standing side by side are those of King Kongmin, the 31st king of Koryo, and his wife. The western one is that of King Kongmin and the eastern one is that of the queen, Princess Roguk. They are located in the middle of Muson Peak of Mt. Pongmyong 3 km west of the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon.

Figure 57: General view of Mausoleum of King Kongmin

When the queen died in 1365, King Kongmin selected the site of the tomb in person, and had a tomb built there. He also had his tomb built in advance. The project continued for seven years until 1372.

In 1956, the Mausoleum of King Kongmin was unearthed. It has a single chamber (2.97 m east to west, 3 m south to north, and 2.29 m high) with a flat ceiling and a long passageway. The chamber was plastered with lime. The ceiling was decorated with a celestial design, while the east, west and north walls were decorated with the Twelve Zodiac Figures, four on each wall. The paintings are said to have been drawn by the king himself, who was well versed in fine art and left several fine art works.
The tomb area consists of four terraces: on the uppermost terrace are the mounds, with screen slabs carved with the Twelve Zodiac Figures surrounding them, and there are railings outside the slabs. Outside the railings, four stone sheep and stone tigers are placed alternately for each mound, to guard the tombs. In front of each mound there is a stone table and stone pillars on the sides of the tables. On the lower third terrace there are stone lanterns and two civil officials placed symmetrically on each side and a staircase leading to the upper terrace for each tomb. On the second terrace, there are two military officials on each side and staircases at the centre and on both sides. The lowest terrace is sloping land with a passageway at the centre and on the right is a hall for memorial services. On the west is the site of Kwangtongbojeson Temple, which had been built in memory of the king and the queen. On the east is the Monument to Kwangtongbojeson Temple.

In other royal tombs of Koryo, it was found that the kings and queens were buried together in one chamber or they were buried separately in different places. The form of double mounds, found in the tomb of King Kongmin, was followed during the Ri dynasty.
2. DESCRIPTION

The peak in front of the tombs is called Acha. The name has a legend: after the queen died, the king dispatched many officials to discover the best place for her tomb. When a place was not to his liking, he had the official, who had selected it, killed. When he did not like the place selected by an official, he would take his hand and his subjects killed the official without mercy. The present site was good, so the king was happy and took the official’s hand. His subjects, who were waiting, killed the official, thinking that the king wanted him killed. The king realized his mistake and said “Acha!” in regret. Since then, the peak has been called Acha Peak.

The Mausoleum of King Kongmin is outstanding in terms of location, architectural style and artistic features. The structures around them are preserved in their original state. Representing in a comprehensive way the standards of mathematics, astrology, geography, masonry, sculpture and fine art reached by the Koryo people at the time, the tomb is considered an excellent historical site of the days of Koryo, as well as in the history of the Korean Peninsula.
2. DESCRIPTION

Figure 60: Acha Peak in front of Mausoleum of King Kongmin

Figure 61: Stone sheep
2. DESCRIPTION

NOMINATION

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

Figure 62: Stone tigers

Figure 63: Stone lantern & Stone pillar
2. DESCRIPTION

NOMINATION

Figure 64: Statue of a military official

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

2. DESCRIPTION

NOMINATION

Figure 65: Mausoleum of King Kongmin
Figure 66: Shrine at Mausoleum of King Kongmin
Figure 67: Stone structures at Mausoleum of King Kongmin

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
2 (b) History and Development

2 (b)-1 Outline of Korea’s History

The first state in the ancient history of Korea was Joson, founded in early 3000 BC. This state is usually called Ancient Joson to differentiate it from later Joson (Ri dynasty). Its capital was Pyongyang and its centre were the plain at the mouth of the Taedong River. Ancient Joson was divided into Tangun Korea (3000 BC–13th century BC), Later Joson (12th century BC–3rd century BC) and Man Joson (2nd century BC–108 BC). After the establishment of Ancient Joson, Puyo was established in its north and Jinguk in its south. The dolmen (type of tomb) is representative of this ancient culture.

In 277 BC, Koguryo was founded in the northwestern region of Ancient Joson. Ancient Joson was ruined by its war against the Han dynasty of China in 108 BC. Later the territory and the people of Ancient Joson gradually became a part of Koguryo. In the late 1st century BC, Jinguk in the southern part of the Korean Peninsula was ruined, and Paekje and Silla were established in its place. In the 4th century, Koguryo recovered most of the former territory of Ancient Joson and absorbed Puyo. Until the mid-7th century, Koguryo, Paekje and Silla co-existed in the large area comprising the Korean Peninsula and Northeast China, competing for hegemony. In the history of Korea, these days are called the Three Kingdoms period.

During the Three Kingdoms period, religions such as Buddhism, Confucianism and Taoism began to make inroads into the Korean Peninsula from the continent. Buddhism first infiltrated into Koguryo in 372, and then into Paekje and Silla, exerting influence on their political and cultural life. In the 7th century Taoism began to spread. Buddhism and Confucianism exerted a great influence on the spiritual and cultural development of the later successor states on the Peninsula. With the spread of Buddhism, many temples and pagodas were set up, many of whose sites still remain. Representative of Koguryo are royal palace walls, royal palace sites, city walls, large-scale stone-piled tombs and mural tombs. Representative Koguryo tombs have been inscribed on the World Heritage List. Paekje built its tombs in the Koguryo form, but Silla built unique tombs by making coffin cases with wood and covering them with gravel.

In collaboration with the Tang dynasty of China, Silla ruined Paekje in 660 and Koguryo in 668. In 698, Tae Jo Yong, a former general of Koguryo, built a state called Palhae in the former territory of Koguryo. Palhae and Silla co-existed for two hundred years, with the Taedong River in the central part of the Korean Peninsula forming the border between them.
During this time Buddhist culture had its heyday in Silla, and many monks visited China during the Tang dynasty, travelling as far as India, the birthplace of Buddhism. Silla left us the sculptures of the Sokgul Grotto, the stone pagodas at the Pulguk Temple, the rock-cut relief of a Buddha at Mt. Namsan and other outstanding stone works and architectural structures, of which representative ones have already been registered as World Heritage Sites. The burial chambers of its tombs were stone chambers as in Koguryo, but the stone structures around the tomb were in the style of the Tang dynasty. Setting up screen slabs and sculptures of the Twelve Zodiac Figures was Silla’s own creation.

In the late 9th century, Palhae and Silla became weak. Peasant revolts broke out one after another in Silla, and during this time Thaebong and Hubaekje were founded. These small states were independent states, free from domination by Silla.

In 918, Wang Kon, a general of Thaebong, staged a coup in the capital of Thaebong and founded Koryo. Next year he moved the capital to Kaesong. In 926 Palhae was ruined during the invasion by Khitan. While embracing the people of Palhae, Koryo annexed a large part of the former territory of
2. DESCRIPTION

Palhae. In 935, when its weakness made its survival as a state impossible, Silla surrendered to Koryo voluntarily. Koryo then annexed Hubaekje in 936 by force of arms. In this way, a unified state was set up on the Korean Peninsula for the first time. The Buddhist country continued to exist for 475 years.

In 1392, Ri Song Gye, a general of Koryo, overthrew Koryo and founded Joson (usually called Ri’s Joson or Ri dynasty to differentiate it from former Joson). He then moved the capital to Seoul (the then Hanyang) in 1394.

The Ri dynasty rejected Buddhism and relied on Confucianism in its governance. However, Buddhism continued to exert its influence, leaving behind a cultural heritage. The dynasty lasted 500 years, before being reduced to a colony of Japan in 1905.

Japan was defeated in the World War II and Korea was liberated in 1945. After its liberation Korea was divided into a northern and a southern state, with the 38th Parallel serving as the border between them. Korea has been divided into two states by this Military Demarcation Line since the Korean War (1950–1953).
2. DESCRIPTION

Map 29: History of Korea (12th century BC– AD 14th century)

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
2. DESCRIPTION

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

Figure 68: History & Religions of Korea

HISTORICAL PERIODS IN THE KOREAN PENINSULA

- Jinguk
- Silla
- Paekje
- Puyo
- Ancient Joson
- Koguryo
- Palhae
- Koryo
- Ri Dynasty
- Japanese Colonial Rule
- North-South Division

Early 30th Century B.C: 108 B.C
668
918
1392
1905
1945
Present

RELIGIONS IN THE KOREAN PENINSULA

- Taoism
- Confucianism
- Buddhism

227 B.C
698
918
1392
1905
1945
Present

- Period of Palhae & Later Silla
- Koryo Period
- Period of Ri Dynasty
- Japanese Colonial Rule
- Period of North-South Division
- Three-Kingdom Period
2 (b)-2 History of Koryo

From its founding king to the 34th and last King Kongyang, Koryo ruled for 475 years from 918 to 1392 (see Table 8).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Posthumous Names of Kings</th>
<th>Period of Rule</th>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Posthumous Names of King</th>
<th>Period of Rule</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Thaejo (Wang Kon)</td>
<td>918–943</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>Uijong</td>
<td>1147–1170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Hyejong</td>
<td>944–945</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>Myongjong</td>
<td>1171–1197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Zongjong</td>
<td>946–949</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Sinjong</td>
<td>1198–1204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Kwangjong</td>
<td>950–975</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>Huijong</td>
<td>1205–1211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Kyongjong</td>
<td>976–981</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>Kangjong</td>
<td>1212–1213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Songjong</td>
<td>982–997</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>Kojong</td>
<td>1214–1259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Mokjong</td>
<td>998–1009</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>Wonjong</td>
<td>1260–1274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Hyonjong</td>
<td>1010–1031</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>King Chungryol</td>
<td>1275–1308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Tokjong</td>
<td>1032–1034</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>King Chungson</td>
<td>1309–1313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Jongjong</td>
<td>1035–1046</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>King Chungsuk</td>
<td>1314–1339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Munjong</td>
<td>1047–1082</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>King Chunghye</td>
<td>1331–1344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Sunjong</td>
<td>1083</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>King Chungsok</td>
<td>1345–1348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Songjong</td>
<td>1084–1094</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>King Chungjong</td>
<td>1349–1351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Honjong</td>
<td>1095</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>King Kongmin</td>
<td>1352–1374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Sukjong</td>
<td>1096–1105</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>King U</td>
<td>1375–1388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Yejong</td>
<td>1106–1122</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>King Chang</td>
<td>1388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Yinjong</td>
<td>1123–1146</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>King Kongyang</td>
<td>1389–1392</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Named so to make its succession to Koguryo more acceptable, Koryo unified the Korean Peninsula, and taking advantage of the stable political situation, it achieved rapid development in all fields. It reached its greatest height in the 12th century.

In 1170, military officials staged a coup and ruled the country for 100 years. This unsettled the country’s politics, and subsequently frequent foreign invasions hampered the country’s development. Invasion and intervention by China’s Yuan dynasty from the 13th century to the early 14th century also had an impact on the country’s politics and culture.

---

29 Title given to a king posthumously
Since its founding, Buddhism had been the official religion of Koryo. Whenever a national event took place, its kings relied on the power of Buddhism. Monks enjoyed special treatment and protection from the state and intervened in politics.

Confucianism and Taoism also exerted influence on the social and political life in Koryo, with Confucianism providing the principles underlying the ruling of the state. In the latter half of Koryo’s rule, metaphysics\(^{30}\), a new faction of Confucianism, was introduced by the North Song dynasty in China, and Confucian scholars and bureaucrats made advances against Buddhism. The newly-emergent force served as a political base of Ri Song Gye, who was scheming to overthrow Koryo and seize power. Taoist ideas of spirit and long life implanted the concept of eternal life in the Koryo people, and left their symbols in the building of tombs.

The belief in geomancy, a popular religion, also exerted a great influence on social life. The belief was a prerequisite in selecting the locations of the capital, royal palace, royal tombs and temples. This can be seen in the nominated property.

Koryo achieved a great development in the economy and culture, for example, printing developed rapidly. Metal type was invented for use in printing, for the first time in history. In the mid-14\(^{th}\) century, the Complete Collection of Buddhist Scriptures was printed by means of 80,000 woodblocks\(^{31}\).

The creation of a unified state led to a demand for an alphabet unique to Korea.\(^{32}\) This saw the invention of *Hunminjongum* in 1444, a few years after the ruin of Koryo.

Through brisk foreign trade, Koryo exported celadon, silks, folding fans, paper and ginseng to China, Japan and as far as the Middle East. The word, *Korea*, denoting Koryo, began to be known in Europe through the book called *Travels of Marco Polo*. The word, *Korea*, is still used as the name for the country, even 600 years after the ruin of Koryo.

In 1388, when the Ming dynasty (1368–1644), which had followed the Yuan dynasty\(^{33}\), made a claim on the northern territory of Koryo, Koryo organized an expedition to recover the territory of ruined Koguryo. A commander of the expedition, Ri Song Gye, availed himself of this opportunity, staged a

---

\(^{30}\) Objective idealistic philosophy which originated in the Northern Song of China in the 11\(^{th}\) – 12\(^{th}\) century. It supported Confucianism theoretically.

\(^{31}\) Janggyongpanjon at the Haein Temple in Hapchon, South Kyongsang Province, which stores the 80,000 woodblocks used in printing the Complete Collection of Buddhist Scriptures, has been inscribed as a World Heritage site.

\(^{32}\) Until then, Chinese characters or ideographs were used in writing. This meant that the written and spoken form of a language could vary greatly from each other.

\(^{33}\) Dynasty established by the Mongols in the vast territory of Mongolia and China, and which lasted from 1206 to 1388.
coup based on the newly emerging Confucian forces, replaced the King and seized power. In 1392, he dethroned King Kongyang, the last king of Koryo, and made himself king, thereby ending the kingdom of Koryo.

2 (b)-3 History of Kaesong

Kaesong is situated on the fertile plain in the middle of the western coast of the Korean Peninsula. This region has been settled since the Palaeolithic Age.

In the days of the Three Kingdoms, Kaesong was part of Paekje, then of Koguryo, and finally of Silla. In those days, it was a small village located near the border.

From the 9th century on, Kaesong began to prosper. Famous geomancers at the time predicted that as the area south of Mt. Songak was a good place, the village, which had been north of the mountain, would prosper if it was moved to the south. As advised, the Wang family, the most influential family in the area, moved the village and Mt. Songak became the Jusan of geomancy in Kaesong. In 877, Wang Kon was born. Legend has it that Mt. Songak roared when Wang Kon was born. From then on, it was said in Kaesong that “when Mt. Songak roars, a great man is born in Kaesong”. In 896, Wang Kon had the Palocham Walls built in Kaesong and became its lord. As geomancers had predicted, he founded Koryo in 918, and unified the Korean Peninsula in 936.

In 919, Wang Kon, the founder-king, designated Kaesong as the capital of Koryo. Later Kaesong developed as the capital city of the unified state. Mt. Songak became the spiritual symbol of the Kaesong people. Wang Kon had his royal palace built on the site of his family’s house. The Imperial and Palace Walls were built inside the southern part of the Palocham Wall. The capital was built in the wide basin surrounded by Mt. Songak in the north, Mt. Jine in the west, Mt. Puhung in the east, and Mt. Ryongsu in the south. These four mountains are the guardians of Kaesong according to geomancy. During the reign of King Hyonjong, the 8th king of Koryo, the Outer Wall linking these mountains and surrounding Kaesong as a whole, was built, taking 21 years to be completed. As the Outer Wall was too large to be defended, the Inner Wall was built surrounding the major area of the capital and leaving the southern part of the Outer Wall a dwelling area. This project was completed in 1393.

34 Representative mountain in a relevant area, which according to geomancy embodies the spirit of the area.
Kaesong was the centre of Buddhism in Koryo. Over 70 temples were built in various parts of the city, and there were so many pagodas that they looked like a forest. The royal family members were devout Buddhists. Many of the princes became monks of their own will. A lantern festival\(^{35}\), Phalgwan party\(^{36}\) and other Buddhist functions were held in grand style every year. Some temples in Kaesong of thousands of Kans\(^{37}\) were bigger than the royal palace itself. Some temples had hundreds, even thousands, of monks and hundreds of hectares of land. The temples possessed great wealth, and monks were on a par with the royal family in their authority.

Kaesong in those days was one of the largest commercial cities in Asia. Koryo’s famous celadon, silks, paper, folding fans and ginseng were exported via Kaesong to Song, Jurchen, Khitan, Japan and other countries through Arab merchants. Pyokrando in the lower reaches of the Ryesong River was an international trading port. According to Koryosa and other historical records, the Pyokrando Port, which was near Koryo’s capital, was always full of foreign merchant vessels. In February 1055 alone, 340 merchants from Song and 27 from Jurchen visited Kaesong. Ryesong River, a picture drawn by Ri Nyong and portraying Pyokrando in the early 12\(^{th}\) century, was known in China during the Song dynasty.

With the collapse of Koryo in 1392, Kaesong was reduced from a political, religious, cultural and commercial hub to a regional city. The political centre moved to Seoul, the capital of the new dynasty. In accordance with the policy of rejecting Buddhism pursued by the Ri dynasty, all the temples in Kaesong were destroyed. Pyokrando ceased its existence as a trading port. Though Kaesong lost its status as the capital city, it remained a major commercial city during the Ri dynasty. The Ri dynasty attached special importance to Kaesong, a northern gateway to Seoul. Kaesong maintained its status next to the capital city not only in political, economic and military aspects but also in scientific and cultural aspects.

\(^{35}\) Buddhist ceremony held to pray for the blessing of Buddha, with lit lanterns.

\(^{36}\) Buddhist ceremony held in royal palace, with playing, singing and dancing.

\(^{37}\) A Kan corresponds to a bay meaning the space between two columns. For example, the total number of Kans of a house with 3 bays on the front and 2 bays on the side is 6 kans (3 X 2 = 6).
During Japanese colonial rule, modern public buildings, schools, churches and railways were built in various places, and roads were built according to an “urban development plan”. The appearance of the old city underwent a great change. In this process, many sites, including the Inner Wall and Naedongdae Gate and Soso Gate were removed.

In 1945, at the end of the World War II, Kaesong, which was south of the 38th Parallel, was occupied by US troops. After the Korean War (1950–1953) it became a city of the DPRK, directly placed under central authority, and is now situated on the Military Demarcation Line. Many local factories, educational institutions, modern apartments and streets such as Thongil Street have been built. Since 2003, it has been part of North Hwanghae Province (see Table 25).
2 (b)-4 Construction of Capital City in Korea and Historical Change in Architecture

2(b)-4-I Historical Change in the Design of Capital City and Formation of City Walls

In the capitals of the early states on the Korean Peninsula, the capital cities had separate walls to make defending them easier. In peacetime, people lived on the plain, and in wartime sought refuge inside the walled areas in the mountains. Typical examples are Jian, the second capital, and Pyongyang, the third capital, of Koguryo (277BC –668 AD).

From the mid-6th century, Koguryo began to build its city walls of a new type in areas on the Taedong and Potong Rivers in Pyongyang. The walls surrounded the whole area of Pyongyang, and were built in the plain and mountainous areas. These walls were the first of their kind.

Koryo (918-1392) built the Imperial and Palace walls after its founding, but could not build city walls owing to the country’s difficult situation. During a war with Khitan from the late 10th century to the early 11th century, Koryo keenly felt the need for city walls, and built them in the Koguryo style. It took 21 years to finish them, and they were 23 km in circumference, the longest in Korea.
Koryo built the city walls by developing the Koguryo style in line with prevailing conditions. Applied in the building of the Kaesong Walls was the principle of geomancy, a popular belief in Koryo. This can be seen in their linking the Guardian Mountains mentioned in geomancy and in distributing Pang-Ri (grid system) and other sections and roads freely inside the walls according to the features of the terrain. The characteristics of making skillful use of the features of mountainous terrain are quite different from the style of building walls in China, which were square walls on the plain and the area enclosed by them sectioned in a chequered pattern in a well-regulated way.

![Figure 72: Kaesong of Koryo and Changan of Tang (China)](image)

**2(b)-4-2 Historical Change in the Architectural Design of Palaces**

Among the sites of the palaces of successive kingdoms on the Korean Peninsula, those whose whole appearance has been revealed are the Anak Palace in Pyongyang, the third capital of Koguryo, and Manwoldae in Kaesong, the capital of Koryo.

The Anak Palace was built in the early 5th century at the southern foot of Mt. Taesong; the walls are square-shaped, and many buildings were built inside them. The main halls, such as jongjon, phyonjon and chimjon, were placed in an orderly fashion on a central north-to-south axis, then other palace structures symmetrically on both sides of the axis, and a garden at the back. This strict right-to-left
symmetry can also be seen in the royal palaces of the Tang and North Song dynasties of China and the Nara period of Japan.

But the royal palace of Koryo on Manwoldae was laid out free of this symmetrical character. The palace structures were placed freely, while sustaining the central axis. The Palace Wall was built in an oval shape according to the features of the terrain, and the site was not levelled; the elevated parts were left as they were. This is a new style of distributing palace building, embodying the principle of geomancy. This style was followed in building the Changdok Palace in Seoul, the capital of the Ri dynasty.

![Figure 73: Layout of the royal palaces of different periods in Korea](image)

**Figure 73: Layout of the royal palaces of different periods in Korea**

**2(b)-4-3 Historical Change in the Architectural Design of Royal Tombs**

Typical tombs in the ancient days were dolmens. In the days of the Three Kingdoms, the royal tombs were a little different. Koguryo built a coffin chamber with stones in the form of a palace, and covered it with earth. The tombs of Paekje were similar to those of Koguryo. Silla built the royal tombs by building a wooden chamber underground, placing the coffin inside and covering it with stone. After the days of the Three Kingdoms, the architectural design of tombs in Silla changed gradually. This change was evident in the exterior structures; many stone structures were set up around the mound in the style of the Tang dynasty in China, and the screen slabs for protecting the mound and the stone altar in front of the mound was a new style of Silla. Palhae followed the Koguryo style of designing tombs. Koryo followed the Koguryo style for the interior and the Silla style for the exterior. In other
words, Koryo’s architectural design reflected the nature of the unified state. However, building the tombs on the sites selected according to geomancy, setting up stone pillars and stone lanterns as exterior structures and building T-shaped shrines\(^{38}\) were new in the architectural design of tombs in Koryo. This design reached its peak in the Mausoleum of King Kongmin, which served as a model for building tombs during the Ri dynasty.

2(b)-4-4 *Historical Change in the Architectural Design of Wall Gates*

No gates of the days before Koryo still remain. According to the murals, the gateways in the days of the Three Kingdoms were of the right-angled form. The gateways took the form of an arch from the days of Koryo on. The Kaesong Namdae Gate is the oldest of the wall gates.

2(b)-4-5 *History of the Architectural Building of Educational Institutions*

Kukhak\(^{39}\) is known to have existed in the 4\(^{th}\) century, the days of Koguryo, but nothing remains of this period. Koryo Songgyungwan is the oldest Kukhak building, as well as a rare example of the architecture of ancient national university in Asia. The general layout and architectural design of Koryo Songgyungwan were followed by Songgyungwan in Seoul, built as Kukhak by the Ri dynasty. In Koryo Songgyungwan the lecture-hall compound is at the front and the shrine compound at the back, and thus their placement is the opposite of the Seoul Songgyungwan.

\(^{38}\) T-shaped plane layout
\(^{39}\) Highest institution of learning built and run by the state for educating national officials. It corresponds to a present-day national university.
Sowon, where memorial services for individual Confucian scholars were held and their special thoughts were studied, came into being in 1542, during the Ri dynasty. Sungyang Sowon, built during the Koryo dynasty in Jong Mong Ju’s house in his memory as a Confucian scholar, was one of the early Sowon buildings and the prototype for Sowon built during the Ri dynasty.

2(b)-4-6 Historical Change in the Architectural Design of Monuments

The oldest monuments known in Korea are those of built in the days of the Three Kingdoms. Natural stones were used, and letters inscribed on them. From the days of Later Silla (676–935), monuments followed a fixed design, comprising plinth, body and head. They were divided into those with turtle-shaped plinth and dragon-engraved head and those with four-angled stone plinth and roof-shaped head. This style was followed by both Koryo and the Ri dynasty. The Phyochung Monuments combine both styles.
2 (b)-5  History and Development of Nominated Property

2(b)-5-1  Manwoldae and Kaesong Chomsongdae

Manwoldae

From 919 to 1361, the royal palace of Koryo was situated in Kaesong. At the time of its construction in 919, the royal palace was not large. According to the unearthed materials and records, it is believed that it assumed its present appearance at least before the 12th century.

There were downs as well as ups in the nearly 500-year history of the royal palace of Koryo. It was burned during the 10-day occupation of the capital in January 1011 by the second invasion of Khitan. It was also burnt due to the rebellion led by Ri Ja Gyom, the then minister, in 1126. A large part of it was damaged in the days when the capital was moved to Kanghwa Island between 1232 and 1270 during a Mongol invasion. Each time, it was rebuilt, but after it was completely burned down during an invasion by Hongtou, it was not rebuilt owing to the financial problems. In those days the Koryo court was administering the state in a royal villa, but it ceased its existence in 1392 with the founding of the Ri dynasty.

Manwoldae was not taken care of during the whole period of the Ri dynasty. However, as Kaesong and Manwoldae were symbols of Koryo, they remained in the people’s memory as a city with 500 years of history as a capital; many scholars, authors and painters treated them in their works. Manwoldae was a venue for gatherings of the local people not only on holidays but also on ordinary days. Manwoldae Gyehoedo, drawn by Kim Hong Do, a famous painter in the 18th century, is a typical historical document describing the circumstances of the days.

After the country’s liberation in 1945, US troops attempted
to bulldoze the back site of the central group of buildings to build military barracks there, but had to suspend the project owing to the local people’s protest. During the Korean War (1950–1953), the stoneworks in the front part of the central group of buildings were damaged by bombing. After the war, the local people and the Korean People’s Army soldiers reconstructed the damaged part over two years, between 1953 and 1954. Afterwards, Manwoldae was registered as a National Treasure Site.

In 1973–1974, the Archaeological Institute of the Academy of Social Sciences conducted excavation on some building sites (the names of the buildings are not confirmed) in the central and western groups of buildings. Small-scale excavation projects were undertaken later. A similar project was undertaken over three years, from 2007 to 2009, and several building sites were revealed.

**Kaesong Chomsongdae**

The oldest observatory, which remains as the only structure of its kind from that period on the Korean Peninsula, is Chomsongdae in Kyongju, built in the early 7th century during the Silla dynasty. The records from Koryo do not describe when Kaesong Chomsongdae was built. But a record indicates that there was an instrument for observing astronomical phenomena and there are records of such observations from the early days of Koryo. According to a survey of the bearings of the platform of Kaesong Chomsongdae, due north was 15° to the east. In view of the fact that the bearings of the platform were due north at the time of construction and that due north moves 50.2" every year by the precession of equinoxes, the platform is believed to have been built 1075 years before 1994, when its bearings were surveyed, i.e. around 919, in the early days of Koryo.

According to records, the observatory had ten time observers, astronomical observers, calendar compilers and weather observers, respectively. In all the ancient states, such instruments were situated near the royal palaces. This was because it was believed that the ever-changing natural phenomena in the heavens were related to the king’s governance. The astronomical part of the Koryosa records many results of such observations, such as eclipses of the sun and the moon, comets, meteors and sunspots, left by the observers from Kaesong Chomsongdae.

Kaesong Chomsongdae was the only observatory in the capital during the whole period of Koryo. With the ruin of Koryo, Kaesong Chomsongdae lost its functions and was left untouched for hundreds of years. Today only its platform remains. In the course of recent excavations, some stone materials which had been placed on top of the platform were found. The site is now preserved as a National Treasure Site.
2. DESCRIPTION

2(b)-5-2 Kaesong Walls

The first wall in Kaesong was the Palocham Wall built in 896. After moving the capital of Koryo to Kaesong in 919, founder-king Wang Kon had the Palace and Imperial walls built inside the southern part of the Palocham Wall. Both were earthen walls.

Koryo decided to build a wall in the mountainous and plain areas to surround the whole of the capital city. This was the Outer Wall, in the style of the Pyongyang Wall, which was built by relying on a mountain in the north and rivers on the other three sides. Koryo built the Kaesong Walls as a new type by making use of the favourable geomantic conditions—the four sides being surrounded by mountains, with Mt. Songak in the north. The Outer Wall began to be built from 1009, and the project advanced rapidly after the 10-day occupation of Kaesong by Khitan in January 1011 during Khitan’s second invasion of Koryo. The project was completed in August 1029, 21 years after its start. The wall was repaired in July 1050 and again in 1358. As it became difficult to defend the capital from the frequent foreign invasions, especially in times of weakening national strength, by relying on the whole of the Outer Wall, an Inner Wall incorporating some parts of the Outer Wall was built in the later days of Koryo.

Figure 76: Northern part of Outer Wall, Kaesong Walls
The building of the Inner Wall started in 1391 and finished in 1393. As a result, the wall began to be used during the Ri dynasty when Kaesong was reduced to a local city. Sections of the Outer Wall were abandoned over time, except those that were part of the Inner Wall. The Inner Wall was repaired several times over the whole period of the Ri dynasty, in 1873 for the last time.

During the Japanese colonial rule, the Naedongdae and Soso Gates and many sections of the Inner Wall were demolished in accordance with the urban development plan.

From 1956, the Kaesong Walls began to be managed by the Kaesong Conservation Committee of Cultural Relics and Remains. In 1994, some sections near the pass at Tocha-ri were repaired, and the shrubs growing on the walls were removed in 1995. The earthen walls were reinforced in 2007–2008.

**2(b)-5-3 Kaesong Namdae Gate**

The Kaesong Namdae Gate was built as a southern gate when the Inner Wall of the Kaesong Walls was built in 1391–1393. When the Yonbok Temple was burned down in 1563, a bell house was built near the gate, and the bell of the Yonbok Temple was moved there.

During the Japanese colonial rule, the walls right and left of the gate and the bell house were demolished, and the lower part of the gate was buried in the construction of a road running across the gate.
2. DESCRIPTION

Figure 78: Kaesong Namdae Gate in 1902 and 1940s

On December 25, 1950, the gate pavilion was burned down by US bombing, and only the lower part remained.

In 1954, based on photographs taken before the Korean War, the cornerstones of the pavilion and confirmation by the local people, the Kaesong City Designing Enterprise re-presented the design of the gate pavilion, and thus the Kaesong Namdae Gate was rebuilt. In 1963, 2001 and 2009, two-pillar gates, roof and floor were repaired, respectively, and repainting was undertaken in 2008.

2(b)-5-4  Koryo Songgyungwan

There were three types of education in Koryo: Kukhak run by the state, private schools run by officials, and village schools run by private individuals. With the expansion of administration after its founding, Koryo began to educate the children of the regional officials in Kukhak in its capital from the early 980s. Students studying at Kukhak in 986 numbered about 260. As an institution of Kukhak education, Kukjagam was set up in 992. Aimed at training officials, Kukjagam put emphasis on education in Confucianism, the basic principle of state administration. Kukjagam was renamed Songgyungwan in 1308.

The original site of Koryo Songgyungwan was that of Taemyong Palace, a detached palace of King Munjong (1047–1083). Later it was transformed into Sunchon House for accommodating foreign guests. In 1089, Kukjagam was moved there, after which it was used as an educational institution. With the rapid spread of Confucian metaphysics, which had originated in North Song in the 11th–12th century, the Confucian forces expanded their influence in the political arena in opposition to Buddhism. Accordingly, Kukjagam developed into Songgyungwan in 1308, and the buildings were expanded to the present state in 1367.
With the move of the capital to Seoul in 1394, another Songgyungwan was set up in Seoul in 1396 as a Kukhak of the Ri dynasty. Though reduced to a local educational institution, Koryo Songgyungwan retained its name, and had a status higher than its counterparts as a local school. In 1392, it was burned down by Japanese invaders. It was rebuilt over nine years, from 1602 to 1610, and repaired on six occasions between 1677 and 1855. In 1701, the Kyesong Shrine was built to the west of Taesong Hall.

Figure 79: Exterior of Myongryun Hall in 1920s and today

Figure 80: Interior of Myongryun Hall in 1920s and today

In 1988, Koryo Songgyungwan became the Koryo Museum. On display here now are 10,000 relics unearthed or collected in Kaesong and its vicinity.
2. DESCRIPTION

2(b)-5-5 Sungyang Sowon

By origin, Sungyang Sowon was the house of Jong Mong Ju, a loyal subject of Koryo. The Confucian forces, which emerged with the Confucian metaphysics as their base in the later days of Koryo, exercised a great influence in the political arena during the Ri dynasty. Disciples of Confucianism brought up by outstanding Confucian scholars formed a group for holding memorial services for their mentor and studying his pursuit of learning, and this was the origin of Sowon. The first Sowon came into being in 1542. Famous Confucian scholars in Kaesong laid out Jong Mong Ju's house as Sowon in 1573 in his memory. The original name was Munchun Hall, and in 1575 the government of the Ri dynasty gave it the name Sungyang Sowon. Later, the school developed into a major power base of Confucian scholars in Kaesong.

Figure 81: Lecture-hall Compound and stairs up to the Shrine Compound

In 1633 and 1645, the lecture hall and the shrine were repaired, respectively, and the whole of the school underwent repair in 1823. In 1865, when of the 1,000 sowon across the country only 47 remained, the others having been abolished, Sungyang Sowon was one of the 47 that were left untouched. From 1894, it was used for teaching Chinese characters. For three years from 1907, it was renamed Pochang School, and later it was used as a venue for a short course in teaching Chinese characters. In those days, the outer gate was changed to a triple gate.

2(b)-5-6 Sonjuk Bridge and Pyochung Monuments

Sonjuk Bridge is a stone bridge built in Kaesong in the early days of Koryo. This bridge is etched in the history of Koryo by a bloody incident. In the latter days of Koryo, Ri Song Gye, who sought to overthrow Koryo, schemed to draw to his side Jong Mong Ju, who was then an
important official of the government and a devout supporter of Koryo. In April 1392, he invited Jong to his house to know the latter’s thoughts. Jong recited a poem of his own composition, portraying his resolve to remain loyal to Koryo even at the cost of his life. Realizing that he could not make him become a turncoat, Ri had his men beat Jong to death with an iron stick on Sonji Bridge. Three months after Jong’s death Ri and his men overthrew Koryo and founded the Ri dynasty. It is said that bamboo began to grow beside the bridge after Jong’s death. Since ancient times, bamboo had symbolized uprightness. Mourning the sad death of Jong, the Kaesong people renamed Sonji Bridge Sonjuk Bridge, Juk meaning bamboo. Legend has it that the red marks on the bridge are traces of Jong’s blood.

Figure 82: Sonjuk Bridge in 1940s and its monument

During the Ri dynasty, the Kaesong people set up monuments beside the bridge to sing the praises of Jong and tried to learn from him; in the mid-16th century, they set up a monument inscribed with the handwriting of Han Sok Bong, a famous calligrapher, and the Up Monument40 in 1641. In 1780, the then head governor of the Kaesong Government Office, called Jong Ho In, a descendent of Jong Mong Ju, had the parapet set up on the bridge to block the traffic on the bridge, and he had a stone bridge built beside the bridge to carry traffic.

When he was crossing the bridge in 1740, Yongjo (1725–1776), the 21st king of the Ri dynasty, wrote a poem in praise of Jong’s morality and loyalty in spite of the fact that Jong had been opposed to the founding of the Ri dynasty, and had a monument set up there. In 1872, Kojong (1864–1907), the 26th king of the Ri dynasty, also built a monument to glorify the loyalty of Jong Mong Ju. These are

40 Up means weeping. It is said that the monument has been wet all the time. People gave it the name, meaning that it was weeping for Jong Mong Ju’s death.
2. DESCRIPTION

Phyo Chung Monuments. The pavilion, the triple gate and fence were repaired in 1957, 1980 and 2001, respectively.

2(b)-5-7 Mausoleum of King Wang Kon

The Mausoleum of King Wang Kon was built in June 943, one month after his death. The site was fixed at the southern foot of Mt. Mansu, western range of Mt. Songak, a symbol of Kaesong and geomantic Jusan.

Regarding the founder-king as a god, the Kaesong people would move his corpse to a safe place whenever war broke out, while leaving the other tombs in their places. The times, places and reasons for moving his corpse are given in Table 9.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>When and Why</th>
<th>To Where</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>In 1010, due to invasion by Khitan</td>
<td>Hyangrim Temple in Mt. Pua, Seoul</td>
<td>Return to its original place in Jan. 1016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>In 1018, due to invasion by Khitan</td>
<td>Hyangrim Temple in Mt. Pua, Seoul</td>
<td>Return to its original place in Nov. 1019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>In March 1217, due to invasion by Khitan</td>
<td>Kanghwa Island</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>In 1231, due to invasion by Mongolia</td>
<td>Kanghwa Island</td>
<td>Move to the Niphan-dong, Kaesong in May 1270 Return to its original place in Sep. 1276</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After the collapse of Koryo in 1392, the government of the Ri dynasty took measures from time to time to manage the tomb: in 1433, it repaired the tomb and set up a monument inscribed with the words “Tomb of the Founder of Koryo”; during the reign of King Kyongjong (1721–1724) and King Yongjo (1725–1776), stone structures were rebuilt and a pavilion for memorial services was set up, respectively. In 1867, during the reign of King Kojong, the tomb was repaired; some stone structures, including stone animals, were replaced, and a new marker and monument to the repair project were set up.

During the Japanese colonial rule, there was no repair and restoration works for the tomb and it suffered illegal excavations.
After Kaesong was annexed to the DPRK, the conservation and management of the tomb are as follows:

In 1967–1979, the pavilion for memorial services and the monument house were repaired. Survey and excavation were carried out in July 1992 by the Archaeological Institute of the Academy of Social Sciences, which revealed the structure of the burial chamber and murals, and led to the discovery of several relics, including a golden sculpture of Wang Kon. In 1994, in accordance with the tradition of repairing the tombs of founder-kings, the exterior structures of the tombs were reconstructed. At that time, the mound was enlarged, and the stone structures and the pavilion for memorial services around the tomb were renovated. The well-preserved burial chamber and murals were not touched. To preserve the murals, they were protected by glass in 1994, and in 2006 and 2007 the detached renders of the walls were reinforced.
2(b)-5-8  *Seven Tombs Cluster, Myongrung Cluster and the Mausoleum of King Kongmin*

These tombs are also situated in the ranges of Mt. Songak, a symbol of Kaesong and *Jusan* in geomancy.

With the collapse of Koryo in 1392, the tombs became neglected. Some of them were either robbed or damaged, trees around them were felled and private graves began to appear in their compounds. Eventually the government of the Ri dynasty began to take measures to safeguard them. During the reign of King Hyonjong (1660–1674) in particular, trees were planted around the tombs, and tomb-keepers consisting of three households led by a man surnamed Wang were appointed for each tomb with the task of preventing farming, tree felling and holding funeral services near the tombs.

In 1867, the fourth year of the reign of King Kojong, the mounds of 57 royal tombs of Koryo were enlarged and markers set up.

The tombs were robbed on several occasions during the Japanese colonial rule. In 1905 in particular, the Japanese dynamited the back of the Mausoleum of King Kongmin and went into the tomb, stealing all the relics inside it.

After the Korean War (1950–1953) was over, the Kaesong Conservation Committee of Cultural Relics and Remains surveyed the interior of the Mausoleum of King Kongmin between July and December 1956. From January to June 1989, the shrine was repaired. The Myongrung Cluster and Seven Tombs Cluster were surveyed in 1978, 1983, 1991 and 1993, and their exterior structures also underwent repair.
3. JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION

3 (a) Criteria under which inscription is nominated
     (and justification for inscription under these criteria)
3 (b) Proposed Statement of Outstanding Universal Value
3 (c) Comparative analysis
     (including state of conservation of similar properties)
3 (d) Authenticity and Integrity
3. JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
3. JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION

3 (a) Criteria under which Property is Nominated (and Justification for Inscription under these Criteria)

The nominated property in Kaesong meets the criteria (ii), (iii) and (iv) stipulated in the Operational Guidelines for the Implementation of the World Heritage Convention.

Criterion (ii): “The nominated properties should exhibit an important interchange of human values, over a span of time or within a cultural area of the world, on developments in architecture or technology, monumental arts, town-planning or landscape design.”

The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong demonstrate the important interchanges of cultural, spiritual and political values conducted over five centuries in Kaesong, the capital of Koryo.

Koryo introduced the Buddhism, Confucianism, Taoism and geomantic beliefs (fengshui) which were prevalent in the contemporary Asian countries and produced her own unique culture by adopting those religions and beliefs into the design and layout of her ruling centre, urban defense system, philosophical and educational institutions, monuments and burial places.

From the establishment of Koryo, the Buddhism was a main ruling idea and the Buddhist masters were the advisors of the kings. Many monasteries were built and rituals were held on large scales. The Great Staircases of thirty-three steps, parts of stone lanterns, sites of temples in Manwoldae, and the Mausoleum of King Kongmin and the site of the temple for memorial services for the king – all demonstrate the Buddhist features of Koryo.

The Confucian sites, such as Koryo Songgyungwan, Sungyang Sowon and Phyochung Monuments, reflect the process in the change of values by which the Confucian forces gained momentum with the introduction of the Doctrines of Zhu Xi, a Neo-Confucianism created in the 12th century in China, took the place of Buddhism in the late period of Koryo and eventually led to Confucianism becoming the ruling idea of the Ri dynasty.

The geomantic theory was widely spread, saying that the auspicious place with mountains on all sides and water (river) in the south is the best place to live, as water and wind are gentle here, and the place guarantees happiness and a bright future for the family and its offspring. This theory were much influential on the main constructions including arranging urban buildings and choosing the site of royal palaces, tombs, and other architectural structures, which produced a new design of the capital.
city and its landscape, different from the previous conventional design. The urban design of Kaesong and the layout of palaces, tombs and structures inside the landscape give clear evidence to the adaptation of of geomancy in a unique way.

Before the Koryo period, it had been a conventional design in Korea, China and Japan that the towns were divided into pang (dividing unit of large area) and ri (dividing unit of pang) in a regular, chequered pattern; the main buildings of the royal palaces were placed on a central axis and other structures symmetrically on their left and right. However, Koryo produced a new way of designing the capital city and its landscape in accordance with the principle geomancy, free from the design pattern of the former settlement. This open way of town planning of Kaesong was derived from the development of producing power and commerce of Koryo.

Koryo thus transformed the philosophical traditions prevailing in the region into political and administrative practices, exemplified in its architecture, town planning and urban defence system, and this in turn influenced set the example of state formation throughout the region.

Criterion (iii): “The nominated properties should bear a unique or at least exceptional testimony to a cultural tradition or to a civilization which is living or which has disappeared.”

The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong bears exceptional testimony to the development of cultural traditions of Korea, which are still part of the living society today. Kaesong was the sole capital city of Koryo, the first unified state on the Korean Peninsula which lasted nearly five hundred years, and the political, economic, cultural and educational centre of the country during the entire period of its existence. The nominated property comprises the oldest and most representative architectural assets of Korea which contribute to the diversity of the world culture.

The 500-years-long governance of Koryo following the regional integration gave rise to her unique cultural development by amalgamating the politics, economy, culture and spiritual beliefs of several preceding states.

The royal tombs of Koryo which followed the architectural styles of Koguryo tombs and Silla tombs are the combination of the belief in geomancy and the worship of ancestors; the royal palace of Koryo and the urban design of Kaesong is the continuation of the traditional layout of palaces and town planning of Koguryo – these and other properties attract attention not only because they are large and splendid, but also because they do not damage the natural landscape but rather are in harmony with it.
3. JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION

as if a constituent of nature. These are exceptional examples of the application of geomancy principles in laying out important structures and in landscape design in Kaesong.

The nominated property is the most outstanding of all the properties of Koryo and reflects most vividly the traditions and characteristics of Koryo’s culture. They consist of the site of the royal palace, which was the ruling seat of Koryo; the walls and their installations for defending the capital city; the highest institution of education for training national officials and a private educational institution; an astronomical observatory that exerted a great influence on the formulation of national policy; royal tombs including that of the founder-king; and other relics representing various realms; all representing Koryo’s culture on the highest level.

Koryo’s culture constituted the cornerstone for the culture of the following dynasty (Ri dynasty).

Criterion (iv): “The nominated properties should be an outstanding example of a type of building, architectural or technological ensemble or landscape which illustrates (a) significant stage(s) in human history.”

The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong represent one of the most important stages in the cultural development of East Asia when Buddhism was giving way to Confucianism and becoming locally indigenous with the wide spread and consolidation of the Doctrines of Zhu Xi, while the closed towns were developing into the open towns with the economical and commercial growth, and constitute an excellent example of the days of Koryo, which made a contribution to the creation of a cultural identity unique to Korea.

Koryo culture, based on earlier cultural traditions, reached its highest stage in Kaesong, its capital, and the nominated property shows its unique principles of layout of city, royal palace and tombs inside the peculiar cultural landscape of Kaesong.

The standing properties such as Koryo Songgyungwan, Sungyang Sowon, Kaesong Namdae Gate and royal tombs constitute a unique architectural style of the Korean nation distinguishable from the styles of other countries in East Asia.

The design of the capital and the location of the royal palace and tombs embodied the principle of geomancy and served as a model for designing other cities and distributing other tombs in Koryo. They were followed by the Ri dynasty in the building of cities, royal palaces and tombs, forming a unique culture of the Korean Peninsula for about 1000 years.
3 (b) Statement of Outstanding Universal Value

The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong, incorporating twenty monuments and sites from the Koryo period, testifies to the history and culture of Koryo that existed on the Korean Peninsula for about 500 years between 10th century and 14th century. Koryo was the first unified state on the Korean Peninsula, which helped achieve an integral cultural development of Korean nation by amalgamating the region and several cultures. This was a significant contribution to the development of the Korean national and cultural identity.

The twenty monuments and sites include the site of royal palace, city walls and wall gates that show the ruling base of Koryo, its town planning and its urban defence system and monuments, royal tombs and educational institutions related to Confucianism, Buddhism and Taoism that give an understanding of the political ideas of the ruling circles and the religious and philosophical worldview prevalent in society at that time. The town planning of Kaesong, the site of the royal palace and the royal tombs still preserve the characteristics of the geomantic belief, which had a special meaning for the Koryo people, showing their religious world. The importance of the political, cultural, philosophical and spiritual values of the nominated property is based on the fact that Koryo was the first unified state in the history of the Korean Peninsula and the days of Koryo constituted an important stage in achieving the Korean cultural identity making a significant contribution to the cultural development in Far East Asia. Together, all the components of the nominated property represent the characteristics of formation of the first unified state for the Korean nation.

The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong demonstrates the development of the Korean national and cultural identity by assimilating the cultural, spiritual and political values of the various states that existed on the Peninsula prior to the formation of Koryo and through the interchange of such values with other neighbouring kingdoms over five centuries in Kaesong. They reflect the incorporation of various regional religious and philosophical value systems, such as Buddhism, Confucianism, Taoism and geomancy in various spheres of the state including politics, religion, town planning, urban defence system, architecture and tomb layout principles during the period of the first unified state of Korean nation. The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong therefore exhibit an important interchange of human values over five hundred years within the Korean Peninsula.

Five hundred years of existence as a unified state had helped Koryo develop its own unique cultural traditions. Located in Kaesong, that had been the sole capital of Koryo and the political, economic, cultural and educational centre of the country during the entire period of its existence, the Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong bears exceptional testimony to the development of Korean cultural
3. JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION

traditions that are still part of the living society today. The nominated property comprises the oldest and most representative elements of the cultural traditions of Korea that contributed to the diversity of the world culture.

The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong represent one of the most important stages in the cultural development of East Asia when Buddhism was giving way to Confucianism and becoming locally indigenous with the wide spread and consolidation of the Doctrines of Zhu Xi, while the closed towns were developing into the open towns with the economical and commercial growth, and constitute an excellent example of the days of Koryo, which made a contribution to the development of a cultural identity unique to Korea. Koryo culture, based on earlier cultural traditions, reached its highest stage in Kaesong, its capital, and the nominated property, which incorporates the most important components of the capital, shows its unique principles of layout of city, royal palace and tombs inside the peculiar cultural landscape of Kaesong.

The nominated property is well preserved and maintained through several restoration and repair from their first construction. Most of them retained their functions until about 100 years ago, thus they are adequately authentic in respect to use and function, form and design, traditions and techniques, and spirits and feelings. Most parts of the site of the royal palace have been preserved in their original state. The Kaesong Walls still preserve the size and components sufficient for showing their value. Koryo Songgyungwan, Sungyang Sowon, the Phyochung Monuments and the royal tombs convey their original architecture and layout.

All of the components of the nominated property have now been designated as objects of national preservation. The proposed core zones and buffer zone include all the elements and sufficient relations necessary to prove the Outstanding Universal Value of the nominated property. Thus, the values of the nominated property are proved in a comprehensive way by the individual sites and through the relationship between them and between the sites and the natural environment surrounding them collectively. The site of the royal palace and a large part of the Kaesong Walls are archaeological sites, and these are planned to be unearthed in the near future. The remaining wall parts and gates have been preserved following the original design and using the same type of materials and techniques. Other sites, such as the Kaesong Namdae Gate, Koryo Songgyungwan, Sungyang Sowon, the Phyochung Monuments and other wooden structures, are repaired using original materials and based on traditional architectural techniques while scientific and technical measures have been taken to prevent damage from blights and natural weathering in line with the characteristics of the materials. As for the royal tombs and wooden structures, special attention is paid to prevent damage from such natural disasters as landslides, flooding and typhoons. Regarding stone structures seriously damaged or eroded, repairs or restoration works have been carried out using the same type of design and materials. Even though
Kaesong is active in the industrial development and tourism, any negative pressures do not exist in reality to affect the nominated property.

The nominated property is currently protected under the Law of the DPR Korea on Protection of Cultural Property and being managed jointly by the National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation, The Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office, and the Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon. The general state of their conservation is very good. To better manage the nominated property, including the buffer zone, and to systematically coordinate all conservation measures, a Management Plan has been developed.

3 (c) **Comparative Analysis**

The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong can be compared with properties with similar features in Korea, China and Japan.

3 (c)-1 **Comparison of City Planning, Defence System and Royal Palace**

**Comparison with the other sites in Korea**

In this section the following sites are compared: the city walls and the site of the royal palace in Pyongyang, the 3rd capital of Koguryo (277 BC – AD 668), the sites of the walls and the royal palace in Kyongju, the capital of Silla (57 BC – AD 935), and the walls and royal palaces in Seoul, the capital of the Ri dynasty (1392–1905).

The Pyongyang Walls (552–586) were city walls with a defence system built in the mountainous and plain areas of Pyongyang. Koryo built the Kaesong Walls in the same style as in Koguryo. To the urban design of the Pyongyang Walls, the *Pang-Ri* system was introduced, which had a strict symmetrical character and square sections. However, this system began to lose its significance during the Koryo dynasty, and square-shaped sections placed symmetrically disappeared in the capital of Koryo. Existing outside the Pyongyang Walls is the site of Anak Palace (427–586), a royal palace built before the Pyongyang Walls. Anhak Palace, situated on the southern slope of Mt. Taesong, was surrounded by square-shaped walls. Structures inside the walls were placed symmetrically along the north-south axis. Manwoldae, like Anak Palace, made effective use of a mountain slope to make the
3. JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION

splendour of the royal palace conspicuous; however, unlike Anhak Palace, the structures in Manwoldae were laid out irregularly.

From the outset, there was no city wall in Kyongju, the capital of Silla; there was only Wolsong Wall, a palace wall. The defence system of Kyongju relied on the mountain walls built nearby. The site of the royal palace inside the Wolsong Wall still remains buried underground. Of the palace structures, only the site of the Rimhae Palace, a palace for the crown prince, exists while the others have disappeared.

Seoul followed the landscape design of the capital of Koryo. Following the example of Koryo, the Ri dynasty selected the site of its capital to satisfy the demands of the principle of geomancy, and built the city walls in the mountainous areas by making use of the terrain features mentioned in geomancy. But unlike the Kaesong Walls consisting of several layers of walls, the Seoul Walls were of one layer. They were also shorter than their counterpart in Kaesong, only 16 km. Inside the walls the Pang-Ri system operated but only as a division of administrative units, having lost its original functions. That the Pang-Ri system lost its functions with only its form remained was witnessed in Kaesong during the Koryo dynasty.

The Ri dynasty, as in other countries, had several detached royal palaces beside the main royal palace. Kings would administer the state from these detached palaces. The main royal palace of the Ri dynasty was the Kyongbok Palace. It had been built in the early days of the dynasty (1394–1395) and burned down at the end of the 16th century. It was used as a royal palace for about 200 years of the whole period of the Ri dynasty. The site of the palace was selected according to the principle of geomancy, but unlike Manwoldae it was built in a plain area. The main palace buildings form an axis at the centre, and others are placed in a regular pattern on both sides. This is different from Manwoldae in that it followed the Confucian outlook on values, which stressed a hereditary caste system and the relationship between the sovereign and his subjects. Another royal palace in Seoul is the Changdok Palace. Built in 1405, it was a detached royal palace, but it was large and next to Kyongbok Palace in importance. Noteworthy in the Changdok Palace is that its structures are placed asymmetrically by relying on the natural topography as in Manwoldae.
Figure 85: City walls of various periods in Korea

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
3. JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION

Figure 86: Royal palaces of various periods in Korea

Anak Palace
(427-586, Koguryo)

Manwoldae
(919-1392, Koryo)

Kyongbok Palace
(19th century, Ri Dynasty)

Changdok Palace
(1405-1905, Ri Dynasty)
Table 10: Comparison of the ancient capitals in Korea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Pyongyang</th>
<th>Kyongju</th>
<th>Kaesong</th>
<th>Seoul</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Period as capital</strong></td>
<td>427 – 668</td>
<td>57 BC – AD 935</td>
<td>919 – 1392</td>
<td>1396 – 1905</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>City wall</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length</td>
<td>19 km</td>
<td></td>
<td>23 km</td>
<td>16 km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Years used</td>
<td>117 years</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>474 years</td>
<td>510 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Form</td>
<td>Plains and mountainous wall, stone wall</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Plains and mountainous wall, stone wall and earthen wall</td>
<td>Plains and mountainous wall, stone wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>City planning</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pang-Ri system</td>
<td>Pang-Ri system with square sections</td>
<td>Pang-Ri system with square sections</td>
<td>Pang-Ri system with asymmetrical, irregular sections</td>
<td>Pang-Ri system with irregular sections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Function of Pang-Ri system</strong></td>
<td>Existed</td>
<td>Existed</td>
<td>Lost</td>
<td>Lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Value system</strong></td>
<td>Confucianism</td>
<td>Confucianism</td>
<td>Geomancy, Confucianism</td>
<td>Geomancy, Confucianism</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11: Comparison of the main royal palaces in Korea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Anhak Palace</th>
<th>Manwoldae</th>
<th>Kyongbok Palace</th>
<th>Changdok Palace</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Position</strong></td>
<td>Main palace</td>
<td>Main palace</td>
<td>Main palace</td>
<td>Royal villa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Year of original construction</strong></td>
<td>427</td>
<td>919</td>
<td>1395</td>
<td>1405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Years used as royal palace</strong></td>
<td>160 years</td>
<td>443 years</td>
<td>About 200 years</td>
<td>501 years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Location</strong></td>
<td>Southern slope of a mountain</td>
<td>Southern slope of a mountain</td>
<td>Plains</td>
<td>Southern slope of a mountain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Layout of royal palace</strong></td>
<td>Symmetrical</td>
<td>Asymmetrical</td>
<td>Symmetrical</td>
<td>Asymmetrical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Value system</strong></td>
<td>Confucianism</td>
<td>Geomancy, Confucianism</td>
<td>Confucianism, Geomancy</td>
<td>Geomancy, Confucianism</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The analysis of the city walls and royal palaces of Koguryo, Koryo and the Ri dynasty shows a continuous development pattern in the design principles of such structures. It testifies to the fact that the Koryo period constitutes an important stage in the development of city planning, city wall construction and design of royal palaces.
Comparison with the Historical Cities and Royal Palaces in China and Japan

In this section the following sites are compared: the city walls and imperial walls of Tang (618–907) and North Song (960–1126) of China, and the Heijyokyo, the capital city of Nara (645–784) of Japan, and its royal palace.

The city walls of Tang were the walls of Changan. They began to be built in 582, the days of Sui (581–618) of China, and continued until the days of Tang. The square-shaped walls built in a plain area were used for defending the city. Many wide and straight roads ran on all four sides, and divided by them Pang and Ri were placed in a regular, chequered pattern. The system of Pang-Ri of the style of chequerboard was created inside the walls of Changan on the basis of the Confucian outlook of the Tang rulers, who aspired after an “ideal monarchy”. This style exerted a great influence on the design of capital cities of the kingdoms in the east. But the system of Pang-Ri in the capital of Koryo was not in the style of a chequer board. This was because the system had lost its function, and geomancy exerted its influence on the design of the city. The imperial palace of Tang was inside the square-shaped Imperial and Palace walls and sited at the centre of the northern part of the city. The imperial palace was divided into the Taiji Palace, the main section; the Yeting Palace, the auxiliary section in the west; and the Crown Prince Palace in the east. At the centre, jongjon and chimjon were placed at the front and back on the south-to-north axis, and there were other palaces symmetrically on their left and right. But in Manwoldae, the overall layout of the palace was not strict. This is a unique feature of the royal palace of Koryo that conformed to the principle of geomancy. The difference in the layout of royal palaces of the capitals of Tang and Koryo is totally attributable to the difference in the outlook on values of each dynasty and its cultural traditions.

The capital of North Song was Kaifeng and the city walls were the Dongjing Walls. The walls were built in the plain areas like the walls of Changan. The Imperial Wall was situated a little north of the central part of the city, and the Palace Wall was inside it. The Outer, Imperial and Palace walls were all square-shaped. The Pang-Ri system started during the Tang dynasty lost its actual functions in North Song, but the capital city was built forming regular sections in a chequered pattern as in the Walls of Changan. Before and after the period of North Song, the towns in China began to be open. With the development of commerce, the fixed business areas disappeared and drinking houses and shops emerged along the roads in Dongjing and other cities. As for the layout of the Imperial Palace, the main palace was in the front of the central axis, and phyonjon, chimjon and naewon were placed behind the main palace. Other palaces were on their left and right in parallel. In short, the imperial palace of North Song was a copy of the imperial palace of the Tang dynasty. Compared to the capital

41 The present Xian in China had been called Changan for long.
42 Flower garden in royal palace
city of North Song, the city walls of Koryo were built in the plain and mountainous areas and the city had a defence system which combined the plain and mountainous areas. Dongjing of North Song is identical with Kaesong of Koryo in that the system of Pang-Ri lost its functions. But the city was laid out in a chequered pattern as in Changan of the Tang dynasty. Loss of the effectiveness of the Pang-Ri system in Koryo and North Song was attributable to the development of handicraft and commerce, while in Kaesong it was also attributable to geomancy, which is a characteristic of the open city of Kaesong.

Figure 87: Layout of the ancient capitals of Korea, China and Japan
Heijyokyo was the capital of Japan from 710 to 784. Situated in a wide and flat elevation at the northern tip of the Nara Basin, its site was a “best place of harmony of four guardians” according to geomancy, surrounded by mountains in the east, west and north, and with a plain in the south. This is a characteristic identical with that of Kaesong of Koryo. There were no city walls in Heijyokyo; there were only gates symbolic of the power of the capital city on four sides. In other words, it was a capital city devoid of defence functions. This is a rare phenomenon that cannot be found in Kaesong or in other capitals in ancient times. The city design of Heijyokyo copied that of Changan of the Tang dynasty. The roads running in an orderly way on all sides divided the city into *Pang and Ri*, and houses were located inside them. The royal palace was situated in the northern part of the city centre as in Changan. It was divided largely into a main section and auxiliary sections on the right and left. In the main section there were main halls, in the order of Chodoying, Daigokudeng and Dairi, and behind them were *chimjon* and auxiliary structures. In the auxiliary sections, there were other palaces and government buildings. As a whole, the lay-out of the royal palace was of an orderly fashion, following the layout of the Tang dynasty.

Table 12: Comparison of the ancient capitals of Korea, China and Japan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Changan</th>
<th>Heijyokyo</th>
<th>Kaesong</th>
<th>Dongjing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Period of capital</td>
<td>618–907</td>
<td>710–784</td>
<td>919–1392</td>
<td>960–1126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>City walls</td>
<td>Changan Walls</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Kaesong Walls</td>
<td>Dongjing Walls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defence system</td>
<td>Relied on walls in the plains</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Relied on walls in the plains and mountains</td>
<td>Relied on walls in the plains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature of city planning</td>
<td><em>Pang-Ri</em> system with chequered system</td>
<td><em>Pang-Ri</em> system with chequered system</td>
<td><em>Pang-Ri</em> system with Asymmetrical, not regular sections.</td>
<td><em>Pang-Ri</em> system with chequered system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function of <em>Pang-Ri</em> system</td>
<td>Changan created <em>Pang-Ri</em> system</td>
<td>existed</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value system</td>
<td>Confucianism</td>
<td>Confucianism, Geomancy</td>
<td>Geomancy, Confucianism</td>
<td>Confucianism</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 13: Comparison of the ancient royal palaces of Korea, China and Japan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Imperial Palace of Tang</th>
<th>Heijyokyo</th>
<th>Manwoldae</th>
<th>Imperial Palace of North Song</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>Main Palace</td>
<td>Main Palace</td>
<td>Main Palace</td>
<td>Main Palace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Period used as royal palace</td>
<td>618 – 907</td>
<td>710 – 784</td>
<td>919 – 1361</td>
<td>960 – 1126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>Plains</td>
<td>Elevated flatland</td>
<td>Southern slope of the mountain</td>
<td>Plains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Layout of royal palace</td>
<td>Symmetrical</td>
<td>Symmetrical</td>
<td>Asymmetrical</td>
<td>Symmetrical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value system</td>
<td>Confucianism</td>
<td>Confucianism</td>
<td>Geomancy, Confucianism</td>
<td>Confucianism</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Comparison of the ancient capitals and royal tombs of Koryo, China and Japan demonstrates that Koryo did not copy the stereotypical patterns and values of East Asia in designing a city, its defence system and royal tomb, but developed its own in line with its particular conditions. This shows that the Koryo period not only contributed greatly to developing the cultural traditions unique to the Korean Peninsula, but also constituted an important stage in cultural development in Far East Asia.

3 (c)-2 Comparison of Royal Tombs

Comparison with royal tombs in other states in Korea

The following is a brief account of the architecture of royal tombs erected in the periods of Koguryo, Silla and the Ri dynasty.

The royal tombs of Koguryo were built on hilly or plain areas. Typical of these is an earthen tomb with stone burial chambers. The tomb builders’ effort was concentrated on the decoration of its interior. With a view to decorating it like a royal palace, the tomb was designed to comprise several burial chambers, where a corridor, pillars and brackets were arranged. The layout of the tomb reflected the religious belief in a luxurious, eternal life in Heaven.

The royal tombs of Silla were mainly built on plain areas. Quite differently from those of Koguryo, emphasis was placed on the design of the exterior. The mounds are supported by screen slabs, and stone images representing royal subjects stand around the tombs as well as stone animals, as if on guard. This layout was aimed at demonstrating the king’s dignity and authority on the basis of the Buddhist principle concerning the relationship between the sovereign and his subjects.
Koryo’s architecture highlighted the character of royal tombs as memorial service centres in their compounds, while inheriting the architectural styles of Koguryo and Silla. It also added value to the geomantic conception.

The royal tombs of the Ri dynasty were mostly built at the foot of mountains. They inherited and developed the architectural features of Koryo’s tombs and the religious belief reflected in them. Their architecture and designs became more elaborate.

Table 14: Comparison of the royal tombs of various periods in Korea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Royal Tombs of Koguryo</th>
<th>Royal Tombs of Silla</th>
<th>Royal Tombs of Koryo</th>
<th>Royal Tombs of Ri Dynasty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Periods</td>
<td>277BC – AD 668</td>
<td>57 BC – AD 935</td>
<td>918 – 1392</td>
<td>1392 – 1905</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>Hill or plains</td>
<td>Plains</td>
<td>Middle of the mountain</td>
<td>Foot of the mountain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Form inside tomb</td>
<td>Single or several stone chambers</td>
<td>Single stone chamber</td>
<td>Single stone chamber</td>
<td>Single stone chamber or coffin case covered with lime layer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Form outside tomb</td>
<td>Tomb area was marked by covering its surroundings with stones, or by erecting the monuments.</td>
<td>Screen slabs, stone railings, stone images, stone animals</td>
<td>Screen slabs, stone railings, stone images, stone animals, stone pillars, stone lantern, stone altar, shrine</td>
<td>Screen slabs, stone railings, stone images, stone animals, stone pillars, stone lantern, stone altar, shrine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New components</td>
<td>Stone chamber</td>
<td>Stone objects around the tomb</td>
<td>Kind of stone objects were increased and buildings for ancestral rites were constructed.</td>
<td>Emergence of Stone horses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value system</td>
<td>Buddhism, Confucianism and Taoism</td>
<td>Confucianism</td>
<td>Buddhism, Confucianism, Taoism and Geomancy</td>
<td>Buddhism, Confucianism, Taoism and Geomancy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The comparison between the royal tombs that appeared on the Korean Peninsula at different periods of its history indicates the similarities between the tombs of Koryo, the first unified state of Korea, and those of other states that existed before and after it. It also illustrates that Koryo’s royal tombs hold a very important position in the Korean history of architecture of royal tombs.
3. JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION

The royal tombs in the period of Koryo compared to those in China and Japan

Outlined below are some characteristic features of the Chinese royal tombs built in the Tang and North Song dynasties as well as those in Japan.

The royal tombs erected in the Tang dynasty are mostly located in hilly areas. The mounds of these tombs are surrounded by square fences, each side of which has a gate. To the south of the tomb stand stone animals and stone figures symmetrically on both sides, with several gates called *Que* in between.

The tombs built during the North Song dynasty, despite of some special features, were usually modelled on those of the Tang dynasty. Most were erected in plain areas, and their compounds were quite large. Their mounds were fenced in the same way as those of the Tang dynasty, and to the northwest stood the queen’s tombs. To the south of the tombs were neat rows of symmetrical structures—stone animals, stone images and stone pillars. At the end of the south entrances stood gates called *Rutai* or *Quetai*, corresponding to *Que* of the tombs of the Tang dynasty. These tombs had unique locations according to the geomantic system peculiar to North Song: they were built on the places, high in the southeast and low in the northwest, and so the tombs themselves were placed lower than the entrances to them.

The Japanese royal tombs erected during the 3rd to 6th centuries usually had big mounds and wide compounds. Most of the mounds were rectangular at the front and circular at the back; others were wholly rectangular or circular. From the 7th century following the end of the Nara dynasty, the size of the tombs decreased and the mounds took on a semi-circular shape. Gradually mounds were replaced with pagodas due to the prevalence of Buddhism in Japan. No new mounds had been erected by the end of the 19th century.

These data show that the Korean architecture of royal tombs followed its own course of development, while retaining some similarities with that of neighbouring countries.
3. JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION

### Table 15: Comparison of the royal tombs in Korea, China and Japan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Imperial Tomb of Tang</th>
<th>Royal Tomb of Koryo</th>
<th>Imperial Tomb of North Song</th>
<th>Royal Tombs After Nara Period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Period used as royal tomb</td>
<td>618 – 907</td>
<td>918 – 1392</td>
<td>960 – 1126</td>
<td>7th – late 19th century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>Hill</td>
<td>Middle of mountain</td>
<td>Plains near riverbank, lower in the southeast and higher in northwest</td>
<td>Foot of mountain or plains</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Form inside tomb</td>
<td>Several stone chambers</td>
<td>Single stone chamber</td>
<td>several stone chambers</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Form outside tomb</td>
<td>Tomb is surrounded by a square-shaped fence, with stone objects arranged symmetrically in front of it, and a gate called <em>Que</em>.</td>
<td>Screen slabs, stone railings, stone images, stone animals, stone pillars, stone lantern, stone altar, shrine</td>
<td>Tomb is surrounded by a square-shaped fence, with stone objects arranged symmetrically in front of it, and built gates called <em>Rutai</em> or <em>Quetai</em>.</td>
<td>There is a semi-circular mound or a stone pagoda instead of a mound.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value system</td>
<td>Buddhism, Confucianism and Taoism</td>
<td>Buddhism, Confucianism, Taoism and Geomancy</td>
<td>Buddhism, Confucianism, Taoism and Geomancy</td>
<td>Buddhism and Confucianism</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Koryo’s architecture of royal tombs made significant contributions to establishing the traditions of the architecture of royal tombs unique to the Korean Peninsula.

### 3 (c)-3  Comparison of Wall Gates

The objects of comparison are the Namdae Gate in Seoul, the Pothong Gate in Pyongyang and Chinese gates.

Seoul Namdae Gate (Sungrye Gate) was built as a major southern gate when the Ri dynasty was building the Seoul Walls after moving its capital to Seoul (the then Hanyang). The present gate was built in 1448. A two-storied pavilion stands on the archway-gate masonry. Large and splendid, there are brick embattlements, a hipped roof, and great pillars up to the second storey in the pavilion. The gate, one of the oldest wall gates of the Ri dynasty, was destroyed by fire in 2007.
3. JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION

Figure 88: Kaesong Namdae Gate (1391-1393)

Figure 89: Potong Gate in Pyongyang (1473)
3. JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION

Figure 90: Namdae Gate in Seoul (1448)

Figure 91: The Shanghaiguan Pass in Qinhuangdao City, Hebei Province, China
The Pyongyang Pothong Gate was the western gate of the Central Wall of the Pyongyang Walls. The present one is the one reconstructed in 1473; it consists of an embankment with an arched gateway and a two-storied pavilion. Its general form is identical with the Kaesong Namdae Gate. Hip-saddle roofed and simply decorated, it is different from the latter in its two-storied pavilion.

Archways appeared during the Koryo dynasty. This is shown by the Kaesong Namdae Gate, which became the model for gateways after the Koryo dynasty. The Seoul Namdae Gate and Pyongyang Pothong Gate are illustrations of this style. The Kaesong Namdae Gate is the oldest of all the remaining gates in Korea. Though a southern gate of the city wall, it was built to be one-storied, so as not to damage the geomantic landscape of the capital city of Koryo.

The wall and wallgates of Koryo are different from those in the neighboring countries. In particular, the walls in China were generally built in bricks, while the architectural style of Chinese wallgates is distinct from that of Koryo.

Table 16: Comparison of the main wall gates in Korea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Kaesong Namdae Gate</th>
<th>Seoul Namdae Gate</th>
<th>Pyongyang Pothong Gate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Year of construction</td>
<td>1391 – 1393</td>
<td>1448</td>
<td>1473</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Form of gateway</td>
<td>Arched form</td>
<td>Arched form</td>
<td>Arched form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gatehouse</td>
<td>Single-storied</td>
<td>Two-storied</td>
<td>Two-storied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Layout</td>
<td>3 x 2 bays</td>
<td>5 x 2 bays</td>
<td>3 x 3 bays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size of gatehouse</td>
<td>Length: 13.63 m</td>
<td>Length: 22.58 m</td>
<td>Length: 14.8 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Width: 7.96 m</td>
<td>Width: 7.78 m</td>
<td>Width: 9.15 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Form of roof</td>
<td>Hip-saddle roof</td>
<td>Hipped roof</td>
<td>Hip-saddle roof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Form of column</td>
<td>Entasis</td>
<td>Entasis</td>
<td>Entasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Kaesong Namdae Gate is the only remaining wall gate of the Koryo period and the earliest of all the existing wall gates on the Korean Peninsula that testify to the development of the construction of wall gates in Korean history.
3.JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION

3 (c)-4  Comparison of Astronomical Observatories

The objects of comparison are those in Kyongju, China and Europe.

Kyongju Observatory is the oldest of its kind remaining in Korea. It was built in the first half of the 7th century during the period of Silla dynasty. It is characterised by the cylindrical body and slender waist, thus its streamline shape. In fact, the Kaesong Chomsongda and the Kyongju Observatory are different in the construction years but are not obvious in terms of the exchange of influence on the architectural structure.

The earliest astronomical observatory in China is the Peking Observatory built in 1271 during the Yuan dynasty (1206-1368), while those in Europe are the Copenhagen Observatory (1637) in Denmark and the Paris Observatory (1667) in France. Therefore, the Kaesong Chomsongdae was constructed in much earlier period, thus very old one in the world.

Figure 92: Koryo Chomsongdae and Kyongju Observatory

The Kaesong Chomsongdae is unique to the structure and is a very rare heritage which belongs to the earliest observatories in the world.
3 (c)-5  **Comparison between Institutions of Confucian Education**

The objects of comparison are the Seoul Songgyungwan, Ryonggok Sowon and Sohyon Sowon in Korea and the Temple and Cemetery of Confucius and the Kong Family Mansion in Qufu, China.

National institutions of Confucian education existed in the days of Three Kingdoms on the Korean Peninsula, but none of them remains. The oldest national institution that still remains is Koryo Songgyungwan. Its layout served as a model for the later Songgyungwan in Seoul. The only difference is that the shrine section is at the front and the hall section at the back in Seoul Songgyungwan. Through the layout of these two institutions, one can see that the basic layout of national institutions of education was completed during the Koryo dynasty. Seoul Songgyungwan is more orderly in its overall layout and placement than Koryo Songgyungwan, and the skills revealed in the building are better.

Sowon was an institution of private education set up to inculcate the teaching of individual Confucian scholars with the spread of Confucianism in Korea. The first such institution was set up in 1542, and their number reached hundreds in the last days of the Ri dynasty. Many of them still remain, typical of which are Sungyang, Ryonggok and Sohyon. The layout of Ryonggok is the same as that of Sohyon; halls and dormitory are at the front and a shrine for memorial services for Confucian scholars is at the back. Sungyang Sowon is one of those institutions set up early, and is an example of a typical form of sowon.

The Temple and Cemetery of Confucius and the Kong Family Mansion in Qufu, the World Heritage Site in China, is a representative Confucian site to worship Confucius (551BC-479BC). Its main building called Taesong Hall (Hall of Great Accomplishment) was first constructed in the early 12th century during the period of Northern Song (960-1126). Compared to the Taesong Hall of Koryo Songgyungwan, they are the same in function but different in architectural style. This difference comes from the difference in the traditions and national features in architecture.
3. JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION

Figure 93: Taesong Hall of Koryo Songgyungwan & the Hall of Great Accomplishment in Qufu

Koryo Songgyungwan and Sungyang Sowon are sites that prove the important development of the construction of institutions of Confucian education on the Korean Peninsula in the 10th – 14th centuries and in later days.

3 (d) Authenticity and Integrity

3 (d)-1 Authenticity

The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong satisfy the conditions of authenticity stipulated in the Operational Guidelines for the Implementation of the World Heritage Convention and the Nara Document on Authenticity in terms of use and function, form and design, traditions and techniques, spirit and feeling, location and setting.

The nominated property respects its authenticity in use and function. Even after the Ri dynasty moved its capital from Kaesong to Seoul, Koryo Songgyungwan and Sungyang Sowon were used as institutions of Confucian education as before, and the Kaesong Walls and the Kaesong Namdae Gate were still used. The Ri dynasty appointed persons for keeping the tombs of King Wang Kon and King Kongmin, the Seven Tombs Cluster and the Myongrung Cluster, and now and then repaired the structures around them. After the previous educational and military systems were abandoned when reforms were enforced by the state in 1864, the Kaesong Walls, Kaesong Namdae Gate, Koryo Songgyungwan and Sungyang Sowon lost their original functions. They now serve to educate people about Kaesong’s past days.
The nominated property respects its authenticity in form and design, traditions and techniques, spirit and feeling. Koryo Songgyungwan, Sungyang Sowon, Kaesong Namdae Gate and other timber structures have been managed through regular maintenance. Kaesongji and other books on Kaesong’s history and geography record the repair and maintenance projects implemented in the past. Similar projects are undertaken even now. The projects are undertaken in accordance with the traditional architectural methods and techniques of the nation. The pavilion over the Kaesong Namdae Gate was destroyed during the Korean War (1950–1953) and rebuilt in 1955. It was built on its original cornerstones, using the same materials as during the Koryo dynasty and the early Ri dynasty, true to its original design, and on the basis of photos, designs and other visual materials related to the gate. The Mausoleum of King Wang Kon had its mound enlarged and new stone structures and pavilions were set up around it in 1994; this was a kind of continuation of the historic ancestor worship. Preserving and maintaining the tombs of the founders of states by their successor states is a historic tradition. The Mausoleum of King Wang Kon was repaired several times until the end of the Ri dynasty, during which some structures were added. During the project in 1994, the interior of the tomb was left untouched, while the exterior, including the stone structures, was enlarged following the old ways of placing such structures. The repair of the Kaesong Walls, Sonjuk Bridge and the stone structures and mounds of the royal-level tombs is done on the principle of preserving them in their original appearance. Manwoldae, the site of the royal palace, was preserved in its original state during the Ri dynasty, and it is now a prospective site for archaeological digs.

Refer to Table 17 for a detailed list of recent interventions and state of conservation of the nominated property.

Figure 94: Brackets of Kaesong Namdae Gate before and after the restoration in 1955
3. JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION

3 (d)-2 Integrity

The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong, representing the political, economic, cultural, scientific, educational and religious aspects of Koryo, include all the elements necessary for an understanding of its universal value (see Section 23).

With the modernization of Kaesong, the town’s structure has been changed, with many construction projects undertaken inside and outside the Kaesong basin, but the natural environment showing off the historical landscape remains untouched. Individual sites have a size sufficient for representing its historical values. Many parts of the central and western groups of buildings of Manwoldae have been unearthed, making it possible to re-present the overall size of the royal palace. Koryo Songgyungwan, Sunyang Sowon, Sonjuk Bridge and the Phyochung Monuments have been preserved while their placement and structural layout representing their original functions have been maintained.

Stone structures and tombs also have reasonable sizes to express their universal value. As for the Kaesong Walls, after the end of Koryo, the Palace Wall and the Imperial Wall were abandoned, parts of the Inner Wall lost, and the remaining parts suffered some damage due to natural causes and urbanisation. However, the wall segments included in the nomination are sufficiently complete to understand the design principles, construction techniques and materials used in their constructions.

The nominated property hardly suffers from any negative effects of development and other factors that might affect its protection and maintenance.

All the nominated properties are registered as state designated heritage, and, thus, are under state protection by special management agencies. The Long-term Plan for Urban Construction of Kaesong pays primary concern to the protection of the historical landscape of the city (see 4 (b)-1 and 7(b)-4), and a development strategy is under preparation in a way to prevent an increase in dwellings, and enterprises from encroaching the environs of the sites.
3. JUSTIFICATION FOR INSCRIPTION

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
4. STATE OF CONSERVATION AND FACTORS AFFECTING THE PROPERTY

4 (a) Present State of Conservation
4 (b) Factors Affecting the Property
4. STATE OF CONSERVATION AND FACTORS AFFECTING THE PROPERTY

4 (a) Present State of Conservation

4 (a)-1 Core Zone

The nominated property is protected and managed by full-time management organs, the Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office (KCPMO) and the Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon (MOMKW), and the general state of conservation of the property is good.

The conservation of the nominated property is ensured by routine maintenance and restoration projects. The restoration projects are classified into a large-scale one and a small-scale one according to the extent and character of the work. Table 17 shows the recent interventions (1990~2008), present state of conservation and planned projects (2011~2020) of each site.
Table 17: Recent interventions (1990~2008), present state of conservation and planned actions (2011~2020) of each site

|-----|------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 1   | Manwoldae        | • Restoration of the terraces of the western group of buildings in 1992.  
• Adding soil and sod on terrace slopes before the site of Hoegyong Hall in 2000. | At the moment, the terraces and foundation stones remain mostly as they were.  
• Foundation stones at the site of Sinbong Gate, Changhap Gate, Hoegyong Hall and Janghwa Hall in the Central group of buildings are intact and preserved well.  
• Left with some building sites and foundation stones, the Western group of buildings is now under excavation.  
• The Eastern group of buildings is a buried archaeological site and designated as a future excavation target.  
• Many stones of the terraces in the Central group of buildings have seriously come out of their original places at present.  
• Growth of vegetation is also one of the factors threatening the site. Rank growth of the vegetation screens the site and can bring about structural transformation. | • Cutting grass and trees around the structures including the terrace and stairs.  
• Regular caring for lawns at main group of buildings and the western group of buildings.  
• Providing stability for some stone structures. |
| 2   | Kaesong          | Maintenance                     | Good                           | Maintenance                                   |
|     | Chomsongdae      |                                 |                                |                                               |
| 3   | Kaesong Walls    | • Restoration of the 20 metre-long stretch of wall near the Tochari Pass and removal of vegetation on and around the wall spanning 4 km near the Nulli Gate in 1994.  
• Removal of vegetation on and around the wall | The city walls of Koryo were comprised of Palace and Imperial, Inner and Outer Walls.  
• Palace Wall: no longer exists. A 500-meter earthen wall of the eastern part of the Imperial Wall remains as it was.  
• Outer Wall: the stone wall between Pukso Gate and Nulli Gate and the one between Pukso Gate and | • Providing stability to stone structures.  
• Adding soil and sods on earthen walls. |
4. STATE OF CONSERVATION AND FACTORS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
<td>• Large-scale restoration on eastern side gate in 2001.</td>
<td>Jinon Gate are left in good condition, while the southern parts of the Inner Wall are left.</td>
<td>• Preventing stone decay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Repainting in 2008.</td>
<td>• Inner Wall: original south gate (Kaesong Namdae Gate) has been well preserved and the arched structures of Pukchang Gate, Puksso Gate and Nulli Gate are left.</td>
<td>• Replacing damaged floor boards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Some parts of stone walls nearly come out of their original places and are badly affected by nearby vegetation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Earthen wall is continuously sinking due to erosion of soil.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Koryo Songgyungwan</td>
<td>• Large-scale restoration of Kyesong Shrine in 1990.</td>
<td>Some roof tiles and timbers cracked and corroded due to aging. Roof tiles crumbling while timber columns becoming hollow. Especially the columns of the inner triple gate are severely decayed.</td>
<td>Taesong Hall: Renewal of decayed rafters and roof tiles and repair of columns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Overhaul of Taesong Shrine and Inner triple gate in 1992.</td>
<td>• Due to dampness, moss grows on the roof tiles and fungus on the timber elements.</td>
<td>• East Shrine: Renewal of decayed roof tiles and columns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Repainting part of the Myongryun Hall and Inner triple gate including the pillars in 1995, colouring of columns.</td>
<td>• Bulging of the northern wall of West Dormitory.</td>
<td>• West Shrine: Renewal of decayed roof tiles and repair of columns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Large-scale restoration of Outer triple gate in 2004.</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Kyesong Shrine: Renewal and repair of decayed rafters, roof tiles and columns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Inner triple gate: Renewal and repair of decayed roof tiles and columns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Myongryun Hall: Repair of columns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Jongyong House: Renewal of decayed roof tiles and repair of columns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Incense House: Renewal of decayed roof tiles.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### State of Conservation and Factors

1. **Kaesong**, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

|-----|------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
• Restoration of terrace of Shrine and stairs in 1995.  
• Repair of back of roof of Shrine in 1996.  
• Repair of fence in 2000.  
• Repair of three Ilgak (2-pillar gate with roof) gates before the Shrine in 2002.  
• Repair of back of roof of Shrine in 2003. | • Cracks and corrosion is quite visible in roof tiles and timbers due to aging. The cracks increase and the columns become hollow. Especially the columns of the Shrine are severely decayed.  
• Due to dampness, moss grows on roof tiles and fungus on timber elements.  
• Bulging of eastern wall of Shrine is found. | • East Dormitory: Renewal of decayed roof tiles and repair of columns.  
• West Dormitory: Repair of walls and columns, and renewal of decayed roof tiles.  
• Outer triple gate: Renewal of decayed rafters and repair of columns.  
• Fence: Partial repairs. |
| 7   | Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments | • Repainting and overhaul of triple gate in 1993.  
• Repair of back of roof of monuments-keeping house in 2003. | • Sonjuk Bridge and other stone structures nearby are in a good state of preservation.  
• The roof tiles are very weak due to aging and southern eaves of monuments-keeping house are sagging.  
• Road between Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments is not good for the protection of the sites. | • Monuments-keeping house: Replacement of decayed rafters, and overhaul of roof and columns.  
• Triple gate: Partial repair.  
• Fence: Partial repair.  
• Road to Janamsan Hotel through the sites should be removed. |
|-----|-----------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 8   | Mausoleum of King Wang Kon | • Reconstruction of tomb and installation of protective glass panels for interior walls inside tomb in 1994.  
• Fixation of detached renders of painted walls in 2006 and 2007. | • Exterior of mausoleum is in a good state of preservation but the interior condition of its burial chamber is not so positive.  
• Cracks and detachment of renders on walls of chamber.  
• Enforcements of detached renders made in 2006 and 2007 and treatment to re-adhere the separated renders needs to be continued; water drops form all the time on the surface of the glass panels installed to protect the mural paintings in 1994. | Following measures will be taken inside the tomb by the relevant experts in contact with the State Academy of Sciences and Korean Cultural Preservation Centre:  
• Strengthen adhesion between the plaster and walls.  
• Prevent salt crystallization and deposits on surface of the walls.  
• Disinfect walls to remove the microorganisms residing on them. |
| 9   | Seven Tombs Cluster | • Maintenance | • On the whole, screen slabs, railings and terraces are laid in unstable places.  
• There have been structural failures and stone damage. | Overall restoration on the seven tombs and their settings.  
It is necessary to complement the lost parts of the structural stones. |
| 10  | Myongrung Cluster | • Maintenance | • Some structural components have been lost and damaged, and structural instability can be found in the railings and terraces of Tomb No. 2 and in the screen slabs of Tomb No.3.  
• Small road on Myongrung Cluster has a negative influence on landscape and protection of the sites. Growth of vegetation can have impact on landscape and structural stability of the tombs in the future. | Repair stones including railings and renew damaged elements.  
Repair railings in right places which were changed during previous intervention.  
Keep tombs clear of vegetation.  
Relocate small road on the cluster so as not to affect the sites. |
| 11  | Mausoleum of King Kongmin | • Adding soil and lawns on earth mounds of Hyonrung and Jongrung in 2004. | • Stone walls behind the mounds and some terraces are a little unstable in structure. | Repair stone wall and terraces.  
Repair cracked columns and rafters.  
Renew decayed timber elements and roof tiles. |
4. STATE OF CONSERVATION AND FACTORS

4 (a)-2 Buffer Zone

At present the buffer zone contains an urban area with dense population, a forest area and a rural area, and is managed by the City Management Bureau and Land and Environment Protection Bureau under the Kaesong Municipal People’s Committee, and by the Kaesong City Cooperative Farm Management Committee.

In the urban area, there is a district of traditional houses (see Figure 95), which is an object of national conservation and shows the traditional lifestyle of the Korean people: plazas; modern houses; factories, enterprises and other public establishments; universities; schools; kindergartens; nurseries; hospitals; welfare service establishments; parks; pleasure grounds; and roads. In the forest area, there are forests, roads and some public buildings. In the rural area, there are crop fields, villages and roads.

Figure 95: District of traditional houses in Kaesong
Modern urban development has a certain impact on the landscape surrounding the property, but Mt. Songak in the north, Mts. Puhung and Tokam in the east, Mt. Ryongsu in the south and Mt. Jine in the west, which were the basis of the theory of geomancy adapted to the construction of the city 1,000 years ago, still preserve their natural beauty. Protection of the buffer zone is important in protecting the cultural significance of the property. Therefore, several measures are being planned for improving the protection of the buffer zone (see Section 4 (b)-1 below).
4 (b) **Factors affecting the Property**

4 (b)-1 **Development Pressures (encroachment, adaptation, agriculture, mining)**

The core zone of the nominated property is protected by the Law of the D.P.R. Korea on Protection of Cultural Property that forbids change of land and any new constructions within the protected areas. The buffer zone around the core zone is protected under the Law on Protection of Cultural Property, Law on City Management, Forest Law, and Law on Environmental Protection.

The urban area in the buffer zone is subject to development or redevelopment pressure. This pressure is minimal in the forest and rural areas. Following the demarcation of the property areas and buffer zone again in 2010, a control system has been established for the development activities in the buffer zone, which stipulates that all the development should be available upon the approval of NBCPC through the Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee (see 5 (e)-2 and Appendix 5). Any institutions and individuals that violate this stipulation are subjected to the relevant legal punishment and are forced to restore the damaged environment to its original state. The development of substructure for tourism by foreign business is no exception to the stipulation. In addition to existing laws and plans, a set of guidelines for buffer zone management which details the development in the buffer zone is being formulated and will be finalized in 2011 to take legal effect according to the Law of the DPRK on Protection of Cultural Property. The proposed development projects in the buffer zone, before the formulation of the guidelines, shall be restricted not to affect the sites. According to the long-term plan for the urban development of Kaesong, it is planned to build new houses in certain parts of the urban area and corresponding roads, renovate one-storied, old houses in the national style, and build parks on some hilly areas. This plan is designed not to damage the natural landscape of Kaesong including Mt. Songak in the north, Mt. Ryongsu in the south, Mt. Puhung and Tokam Peak in the east and Mt. Jine in the west, as well as the settings of the nominated property, on the basis of the principle to safeguard the values of the sites (see Map 30: Long-term Plan for Urban Construction in Kaesong). No factory is planned to be built in the urban area, nor is any large-scale development project planned for the forest and rural areas. As the old houses to be renovated in the national style are one-storied, there is no trouble in maintaining a view of the city. In addition, as the parks are planned to be built far away from the sites, there will be no impact from them.
4 (b)-2  Environmental pressures (pollution, climate change, desertification)

There is no environmental or air pollution that can impair the value of the properties in Kaesong. According to the Law on Environment Protection, the standards for the protection of air and water, and for the release of industrial and city sewage must be met throughout the country. There are a number of plants in the urban area producing local foodstuffs, textiles and machines, but pollution from industrial and city sewage is under control.

With respect to the climate, the variation of temperature between summer and winter is high, influenced by the continental climate. Annual average temperature is 10.2° C, in January -5.9° C on average and in August 24.7° C on average. And annual precipitation is 1,290 mm.

Recently, the temperature in Kaesong has shown a rising tendency as well as in most parts of the country due to the abnormal global climatic change. During heavy rains in summer, the roofs of some ancient buildings leak or the surrounding soil is washed away, the property areas are affected by landslides from the mountain slopes at the back and puddles appear within the sites. Regular monitoring of property condition is conducted after heavy rains and repair works are carried out immediately if any damage is identified.

4 (b)-3  Natural disasters and risk preparedness

Earthquakes

It is recorded that there were about 151 earthquakes in Kaesong between 971 and 1714. Koryosa, a 15th-century historic book, states that,“…On June 14, 1260, a big earthquake occurred and destroyed walls and houses. Especially Kaesong severely suffered great damage from it.” And also on May 30, 1965 and January 2, 1966 there were several tremors in the West Sea of Korea near Kaesong. To ensure better protection of the property in case of natural disasters, a risk preparedness plan will be developed.

Noxious insects

Since the old structures are mainly made of wood, noxious insects is one of the major dangers. They also affect the trees around the sites. Preventative measures are being taken, such as sterilizing the wooden buildings and trees with insecticide once a year. The chemicals used have proven harmless to vegetation.
Fire

The wooden buildings are at risk of fire. Modernization of the fire-fighting equipment is being carried out at the sites, while risky activities such as making a bonfire, burning waste papers and smoking are under strict control and supervision within the property area.

There is little risk of fire damage to the tombs and stone structures. However, their peripheral environment may be damaged by forest fire, since they are located in mountainous areas. In order to prevent fires, regulations checking all entry to the mountains during the fire season and fire monitoring and reporting systems shall be strengthened. A system mobilizing the population to help put out any fire as soon as possible shall be established, while awareness of fire risks by the local population shall be strengthened so that volunteers might participate in the management of the sites.

4 (b)-4 Visitor/tourism pressures

Kaesong is one of Korea’s areas for international tourism. So far, visitors to the nominated property have been scientific and educational experts, foreign visitors, overseas compatriots and local people and students. Recently, tourism to the historical sites has been growing rapidly in Kaesong. Koryo Songgyungwan, the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon, the Mausoleum of King Kongmin and the Sonjuk Bridge attract an annual average of 10,000~20,000 visitors, the highest number among the nominated property.

So far, the public service facilities and transportation network have been secured to satisfy only the minimum requirements. Therefore, the rapid growth of tourism can endanger the environmental protection of the sites. The narrow road beside Koryo Songgyungwan might be expanded to handle the large number of visitors and the lawn area before the shrine at the Mausoleum of King Kongmin is at risk of being damaged severely. New construction or extension projects of public facilities for visitors at the KaesonWalls, Manwoldae, Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments are planned to handle the increasing number of visitors. Several routes for visitors with different access will be established to prevent any congestion in the historical area and the specified number of persons comprising one visiting group at each site will not be allowed to be exceeded. The number of visitors could also be controlled by raising entrance fees. The education of visitors will be strengthened so that they will not have any negative effect on the sites and settings along the routes. Also, new signs, in Korean and English, to provide explanations and draw visitors’ attention to the need to protect the site will be put up so to encourage visitors to help with the protection of the site.
Having many people enter the interior of the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon will affect the mural paintings. At present, only relevant experts are allowed to enter the tomb in order to minimize changes in temperature and humidity inside the chamber. For conservation reasons, their visits are limited to four or five persons at one time and the time spent inside must not exceed five minutes. However, in future visitors will be able to use a field model that shows the interior of the Mausoleum.

4 (b)-5 Number of inhabitants within the property and the buffer zone

The proposed World Heritage buffer zone has 148,986 inhabitants.
4. STATE OF CONSERVATION AND FACTORS...
5. PROTECTION AND MANAGEMENT OF THE PROPERTY

5 (a) Ownership
5 (b) Protective designation
5 (c) Means of implementing protective measures
5 (d) Existing plans related to municipality and region in which the proposed property is located
5 (e) Property management plan and management system
5 (f) Sources and levels of finance
5 (g) Sources of expertise and training in conservation and management techniques
5 (h) Visitor facilities and statistics
5 (i) Policies and programmes related to the presentation and promotion of the property
5 (j) Staffing levels (professional, technical, maintenance)
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
5. **PROTECTION AND MANAGEMENT OF THE PROPERTY**

5 (a) **Ownership**

All cultural property in the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea is owned by the state. Therefore, the property nominated to the World Heritage List—Kaesong Walls, Namdae Gate, Manwoldae, Kaesong Chomsongdae, Koryo Songgyungwan Sungyang Sowon, Sonjuk Bridge, Phyochung Monuments, Mausoleum of King Wang Kon, Seven Tombs Cluster, Myongrung Cluster and Mausoleum of King Kongmin—are also state-owned.

The Cultural Preservation Department of the Kaesong City People’s Committee is in charge of the Historic Monuments and Sites in the proposed World Heritage (WH) core areas. The Urban Management Bureau and the Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation of the Kaesong City People’s Committee and the Kaesong Cooperative Farm Management Committee are in charge of the proposed WH buffer zone. The Urban Management Bureau is in charge of all the buildings, facilities, roads, rivers, parks, recreation areas, etc. in the urban area; the Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation is in charge of forests, land, roads, rivers, lakes, reservoirs, etc. outside the urban area; and the Kaesong Cooperative Farm Management Committee is in charge of the croplands in the buffer zone.

5 (b) **Protective designation**

The principal law for the protection and management of the nominated property is the following:


Other related laws are:

- Land law of the DPR Korea (29 April 1977)
- Law of the DPR Korea on Environmental Protection (9 April 1986)
- Forest law of the DPR Korea (11 December 1992)
- Law of the DPR Korea on City Management (29 January 1992)

Cultural property in the DPR Korea is classified into National Treasure Sites and Preservation Sites according to its historical significance as well as its formative and artistic value.
The National Treasure Sites and the Preservation Sites are alike in that both are protected by the state, but are distinguished according to their historical and cultural values. The evaluation of cultural heritage is considered by the State Historical Property Deliberation and Evaluation Committee. The evaluated and registered historical sites are protected by the state. All kinds of acts that may cause damage to them will be considered an infringement of state ownership and will be subject to administrative and penal punishment as stipulated in the Law of the DPR Korea on Protection of Cultural Property.

The protective designations of the nominated property are shown in Table 18.

Table 18: Protective designation on the nominated property

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Designation</th>
<th>Registered Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manwoldae</td>
<td>National Treasure Site</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Chomsongdae</td>
<td>National Treasure Site</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Walls</td>
<td>National Treasure Site</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
<td>National Treasure Site</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koryo Songgyungwan</td>
<td>National Treasure Site</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sungyang Sowon</td>
<td>National Treasure Site</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sonjuk Bridge</td>
<td>National Treasure Site</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phyochung Monuments</td>
<td>National Treasure Site</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td>National Treasure Site</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seven Tombs Cluster</td>
<td>Preservation Site</td>
<td>544</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myongrung Cluster</td>
<td>Preservation Site</td>
<td>549</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>National Treasure Site</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5 (c) **Means of implementing protective measures**

According to the legal provisions, the following legal and administrative measures are taken for the protection and management of the nominated property and the buffer zone.

**Legal measures relating to the protection of the nominated property**

- Every historical site has a preservation area, in which such acts that might negatively affect the protection of the historic sites as cultivation, exploiting of underground resources, construction of houses or facilities without permission, dumping of waste water and dirt, digging, felling of trees, causing of fire and others are prohibited. (Articles 27 and 29 of Chapter IV, Law on Protection of Cultural Property)

**Article 27 (Designation of reserves for historical sites)**

The State shall designate reserves for historical sites with a view to preserving them.

The reserves have to be designated in a reasonable way so as to facilitate the preservation and management of the historical property and provide the working people with a satisfactory visit and rest.

The Cabinet shall be responsible for the designation of reserves for historical sites.

**Article 29 (Prohibition in the reserves of historical property)**

Any of the following acts are prohibited within the reserves of historical property:

1. Act of tilling land or developing underground resources
2. Act of building dwelling houses or structures without permission
3. Act of dumping waste water or sewage
4. Act of digging or felling trees
5. Act of creating fire risks

- Cultural property preservation agencies and relevant organs and enterprises shall protect and manage the historical sites to suit their specific features, and in case of planning any construction project in the area where it may affect the conservation of the historical sites, an agreement with the National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation should be made initially. (Article 25 and 37 of Chapter IV, Law on Protection of Cultural Property)
Article 25 (Scientific and technological preservation and management of cultural property)

Careful preservation and management of cultural property is a basic way of preventing damage to them and maintaining them in their original state.

Cultural property preservation agencies, relevant organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens should preserve and take good care of the cultural property in a scientific and technological way to suit their specific features.

Article 37 (Plan of construction project)

When an organ, an enterprise or an organization plans a construction project in the area which may affect the preservation of cultural property, they must get an agreement of the cultural property preservation guidance agency.

- April and November are designated as the Months for Protection of Cultural Sites and Relics. During these months, local government authorities, cultural property management offices and the institutions charged with public management of sites shall intensively organize and conduct restoration and management works of the historical sites. (Articles 49 and 54 of Chapter VI, Law on Protection of Cultural Property)

Article 49 (Assignment of responsibility for the preservation and management of cultural property)

Cultural property preservation guidance agencies, local power organs and other relevant bodies shall assign responsibility for the preservation and management of cultural property to the local state organs and other interest groups in the areas under their jurisdiction, integrate cultural property protection plans into the local development plans and implement them without fail.

Article 54 (Month of Love Cultural Property)

The State shall institute April and November as Months of Love Cultural Property.

Local power organs, institutions, enterprises, organizations and citizens should organize the work of preservation and management of cultural property in these months.

- The national planning agencies, financial and bank agencies, relevant institutions, enterprises and organizations should fully provide manpower, equipment, materials and funds for the protection and management of cultural property. Those allotted for conservation cannot be used for other purposes. (Article 51 of Chapter VI, Law on Protection of Cultural Property)
Article 51 (Provision of conditions for protection of cultural property)

The State planning organs, financial institutions and banks, relevant agencies, enterprises and organizations shall fully provide labour forces, equipment, materials and funds necessary for the protection of cultural property.

The manpower and financial resources, equipment and materials allocated for protection of cultural property shall not be used for other purposes.

Legal measures for the protection and management of the buffer zone

- The land administration offices shall set up protection areas where necessary in order to protect the rivers, lakes, reservoirs, dykes and other structures. In these areas such acts as damaging river dykes and other structures or hindering their protection and management are prohibited. (Article 25, Land Law)

Article 25

The land administration offices shall set up conservation areas where necessary in order to protect the rivers, lakes, reservoirs, dykes and other structures.

In these areas, such acts as damaging river dykes and other structures or hindering their conservation and management are prohibited.

- It is prohibited to let impure sewage flow into rivers, lakes and reservoirs, or to empty uncleansed toxic materials and dirt into them. (Article 26, Land Law)

Article 26

It is prohibited to let untreated sewage flow into rivers, lakes and reservoirs, or to empty uncleansed toxic materials and dirt into them.

- The land administration offices shall mark out definite areas for the institutions, enterprises, schools and organizations to tend and undertake tree planting in spring and autumn, in order to make the masses as a whole responsible for forestation and forest conservation work. (Article 32, Land Law)

Article 32

The land administration offices shall mark out definite areas for the institutions, enterprises, schools and organizations to tend, in order to make the masses as a whole responsible for forestation and forest conservation work.

The institutions, enterprises, schools, organizations and citizens should take an active part in
spring and autumn tree planting, conserve the forests properly and take good care of them and turn the mountains throughout the country into a paradise of greenery.

- The road administration offices should put up good warning, indication, prohibition, mileage and other road signs, plant fruit trees and strong, fast-growing useful trees, lay out green verges and flower beds and set up resting places along the road sides, thereby keeping the roads in good order. (Article 58, Land Law)

**Article 58**

The road administration offices should put up good warning, indication, prohibition, mileage and other road signs, plant fruit trees and strong, fast-growing useful trees, lay out green verges and flower beds and set up resting places along the road sides, thereby keeping the roads in good order.

- The organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens are prohibited from taking any measure that is liable to hinder the protection and management of roads such as damaging the roads and their structures and installations or cutting down roadside trees without prior permission. (Article 60, Land Law)

**Article 60**

The organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens are prohibited from taking any measure that is liable to hinder the protection and management of roads such as damaging the roads and their structures and installations or cutting down roadside trees without prior permission.

- Inhabited land shall be managed by the central city management office and the local administrative committees. When an organ, an enterprise or an organization wishes to use inhabited land, it should obtain the permission from the relevant provincial people’s committee or from the Cabinet. (Article 69, Land Law)

**Article 69**

Inhabited land shall be managed by the central city management office and the local administrative committees. When an organ, an enterprise or an organization wishes to use inhabited land, it should obtain the permission from the relevant provincial people’s committee or from the Cabinet.

- The land administration offices should exercise supervision and control to prevent the organs, enterprise, organizations and citizens from felling trees without due attention or burning down forests to create fields. (Article 71, Land Law)
Article 71

The land administration offices should exercise supervision and control to prevent the organs, enterprise, organizations and citizens from felling trees without due attention or burning down forests to create fields.

- The land administration offices should assume coordinated control over all the land in the country and register, and exercise supervision and control so that the order established may be strictly maintained in the administration and use of land and so that land may be used in a far-sighted way according to the master plan for land development. (Article 77, Land Law)

Article 77

The land administration offices should assume coordinated control over all the land in the country and register, and exercise supervision and control so that the order established may be strictly maintained in the administration and use of land and so that land may be used in a far-sighted way according to the master plan for land development.

- Institutions, enterprises, organizations and citizens shall refrain from developing coal and ore mines in scenic spots, tourist resorts and holiday centres and from constructing buildings and facilities which impede the protection of the environment, and shall preserve caves, waterfalls, the remains of old castles, natural monuments, as well as spots of scenic beauty and of historical interest, in their original state. (Article 14, Law on Environmental Protection)

Article 14 (Protection of natural monuments and spots of scenic beauty and historical interests)

Institutions, enterprises, organizations and citizens shall refrain from developing coal and ore mines in scenic spots, tourist resorts and holiday centres and from constructing buildings and facilities which impede the protection of the environment, and shall preserve caves, waterfalls, the remains of old castles, natural monuments, as well as spots of scenic beauty and of historical interest, in their original state.

- All institutions, enterprises and organizations shall comply strictly with the permitted limits for the protection of the environment, the pollutant emission standards and noise and vibration standards, set by the State. (Article 19, Law on Environmental Protection)

Article 19 (Compliance with the permitted limits for environmental protection)

All institutions, enterprises and organizations shall comply strictly with the permitted limits for the protection of the environment, the pollutant emission standards and noise and vibration standards, set by the State.
Institutions, enterprises and organizations shall regularly measure quantities and densities of harmful substances emitted during production, as well as the intensity of noise and vibration, reduce them systematically and obtain approved limits from the environmental protection and control agencies concerned. Harmful substances that exceed the permitted limit or are prohibited by the environmental protection and control agencies shall not be produced. (Article 36, Law on Environmental Protection)

Article 36 (Measuring of the quantities and densities of harmful substances and intensity of noise and vibration)

Institutions, enterprises and organizations shall regularly measure quantities and densities of harmful substances emitted during production, as well as the intensity of noise and vibration, reduce them systematically and obtain approved limits from the environmental protection and control agencies concerned.

Harmful substances that exceed the permitted limit or are prohibited by the environmental protection and control agencies shall not be produced.

Institutions, enterprises, organizations and citizens that have harmed the people’s health and the property of the State, social cooperative organizations and citizens by destroying the environment shall compensate for the loss. In cases where institutions, enterprises, organizations violate this law to bring about grave consequences, their officials or the persons to blame shall be called to account administratively or penalty. (Articles 47 and 50, Law on Environmental Protection)

Article 47 (Compensation for the harm to health and property)

Institutions, enterprises, organizations and citizens that have harmed the people’s health and the property of the State, social cooperative organizations and citizens by destroying the environment shall compensate for the loss.

Article 50. (Administrative and penal responsibility)

In cases where institutions, enterprises or organizations violate this law to bring about grave consequences, their officials or the persons to blame shall be called to account administratively or penalty.

City management institutions, relevant institutions, enterprises and organizations shall take stock of the maintenance of city roads and rivers, and improve them in a planned way. (Article 31, Law on City Management)
Article 31 (Planned maintenance of city roads and rivers)

Maintenance of city roads and rivers is a key criterion for the cultural development of cities.

City management institutions, relevant institutions, enterprises and organizations shall take stock of the maintenance of city roads and rivers, and improve them in a planned way.

- Institutions, enterprises, organizations and citizens shall not pick flowers, cut trees or damage facilities in the green areas. Cutting trees and digging turf in the green area without approval of the relevant organs shall be prohibited. (Article 44, Law on City Management)

Article 44 (Management of green areas)

Institutions, enterprises, organizations and citizens shall not pick flowers, cut trees or damage facilities in the green areas.

Cutting trees and digging turf in the green area without approval of the relevant organs shall be prohibited.

- The enterprises that generate hazardous gas and dust in the processes of production shall equip themselves with gas and dust removing facilities and operate them regularly so as not to emit hazardous gas and dust into the residential areas. Vehicles that emit exhaust gas above the limit shall not be operated, and tree leaves and other substances that emit smoke shall not be burned in the central part of city. (Article 51, Law on City Management)

Article 51 (Prevention of hazardous gas and dust)

The enterprises that generate hazardous gas and dust in the processes of production shall equip themselves with gas and dust removing facilities and operate them regularly so as not to emit hazardous gas and dust into the residential areas.

Vehicles that emit exhaust gas above the limit shall not be operated, and tree leaves and other substances that emit smoke shall not be burned in the central part of city.

- The guidance to city management shall be provided by the central city management institution under the unified guidance of the Cabinet. The central city management institution shall get acquainted with and give guidance to city management across the country on a normal basis. (Article 55, Law on City Management)

Article 55 (Duty of central city management institution)

The guidance to city management shall be provided by the central city management institution under the unified guidance of the Cabinet. The central city management institution shall get acquainted with and give guidance to city management across the country on a normal basis.
Land management organs and other organs, enterprises and organizations in charge of forests or reforestation areas should endeavour to combine properly trees of good species such as Changsong larches and evergreens to steadily increase forest areas and improve forest scenery. They also should execute reforestation in a farsighted way so as to improve the economic effectiveness of forests and increase forest accumulation per unit. (Article 10, Forest Law)

Article 10 (Farsighted forestation)

Forestation is an important work for the prosperity of the country.

Land management organs and other organs, enterprises and organizations in charge of forests or reforestation areas should endeavour to combine properly trees of good species such as Changsong larches and evergreens to steadily increase forest areas and improve forest scenery. They also should execute reforestation in a farsighted way so as to improve the economic effectiveness of forests and increase forest accumulation per unit.

If organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens want to enter the forest areas or to set fire in and around the forest areas for the purpose of using the forestland or of exploiting forest resources, they or he/she should get permission from the land management organs. (Article 21, Forest Law)

Article 21 (Permission for forest entrance or making of fire)

If organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens want to enter the forest areas or to set fire in and around the forest areas for the purpose of using the forestland or of exploiting forest resources, they or he/she should get permission from the land management organs.

Without permission, no one can carry things liable to catch fire or cause ignition in the forest areas.

Organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens should refrain from erecting buildings, structures or highways in forest areas, or digging and cutting down trees or clearing forest, digging up stones or soil without due permission. (Article 25, Forest Law)

Article 25 (Construction, lumbering and extraction in forest areas)

Organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens should refrain from erecting buildings, structures or highways in forest areas, or digging and cutting down trees or clearing forest, digging up stones or soil without due permission.
• Land management organs and other relevant organs, enterprises and organizations shall conduct projects for erosion control and torrential improvement in a planned way and regularly repair the facilities concerned so as to protect forests from natural disasters such as torrential rains or landslides. (Article 26, Forest Law)

Article 26 (Projects for erosion control and torrential improvement)

Land management organs and other relevant organs, enterprises and organizations shall conduct projects for erosion control and torrential improvement in a planned way and regularly repair the facilities concerned so as to protect forests from natural disasters such as torrential rains or landslides.

• Permission of use of forestland shall be given by the Cabinet or by the land management organs concerned. The Cabinet or the relevant land management organs should take into full account the purpose for and scale of use of forestlands in question before issuing permissions for its use. (Article 30, Forest Law)

Article 30 (Permission of use of forestland)

Permission of use of forestland shall be given by the Cabinet or by the land management organs concerned. The Cabinet or the relevant land management organs should take into full account the purpose for and scale of use of forestlands in question before issuing permissions for its use.

• Supervision and control on forest administration are executed by the land management organs and other relevant supervisory and control agencies. The land management organs and other relevant supervisory and control agencies should fulfil their duty so as to create forest on the principle of replacing one tree with ten, prevent damage from fire, blights and harmful insects, landslides, or reckless clearing for cultivation and deforestation and comply to the letter with the regulations in exploiting forest resources such as the use of forestland, lumbering and consumption of timbers. (Article 44, Forest Law)

Article 44 (Supervision and control on the forest management)

Supervision and control on forest administration are executed by the land management organs and other relevant supervisory and control agencies.

The land management organs and other relevant supervisory and control agencies should fulfil their duty so as to create forest on the principle of replacing one tree with ten, prevent damage from fire, blights and harmful insects, landslides, or reckless clearing for cultivation and deforestation and comply to the letter with the regulations in exploiting forest resources
such as the use of forestland, lumbering and consumption of timbers.

- In cases where grave consequences have resulted from violating the regulations for protection and exploitation of the forest resources, the officials or persons of the institutions, enterprises and organizations to blame shall be called to administrative or penal punishment according to the damage done. (Article 47, Forest Law)

Article 47 (Administrative and penal responsibility)

In cases where grave consequences have resulted from violating the regulations for protection and exploitation of the forest resources such as failing to perform assigned tree-planting plans or to ensure the proper rate of rooting, or reckless deforestation, exploitation and export, or causing forest fire, the officials or persons of the institutions, enterprises and organizations to blame shall be called to administrative or penal punishment according to the damage(s) done.

Legal and administrative measures put into effect through the regular system of management machinery.

- The National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation (NBCPC) ensures the unified guidance to the protection of cultural property under the leadership of the Cabinet. It draws up the Management Plan for the protection and management of the nominated property and delivers it to the Cultural Preservation Department of the Kaesong City People’s Committee and the cultural property management offices. The Cultural Preservation Department of the Kaesong City People’s Committee and the cultural property management offices, in accordance with the plan, make their annual management work plans to suit their actual conditions and execute them.

- To ensure thorough execution of the plans, there is a Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee which is a non-standing organization including the heads of the government authorities in Kaesong, as well as the above-said administrative system. The committee meets twice a year to discuss the implementation of the national policies and laws related to the protection of cultural property and take appropriate measures.

- Protection of the buffer zone is advised by the Urban Management Bureau (UMB), Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation (MBLEC) of the Kaesong City People’s Committee, and Kaesong Cooperative Farm Management Committee (KCFMC) under the guidance of the Ministry of Urban Management, Ministry of Land And Environmental Conservation, Ministry of Agriculture, all of which are under the Cabinet. The UMB, MBLEC and KCFMC shall make and implement the annual management plans of their own in keeping
with the requirements of long-term plans for land administration from their superior organs. Organs or individual persons planning a development project shall submit relevant application to the relevant organ (UMB or MBLEC) of the Kaesong City People’s Committee or to the KCFMC (in case it is related with crop land). Development projects shall include building of new public structures or houses, renovation, reinforcement or destroying of public buildings or houses, building of roads, electric and other public works, land reclamation and irrigation work, underground excavation and building or changing of waterways.

The application shall be submitted to the NBCPC through the Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee. The NBCPC, in consultation with the relevant specialists, examines in detail the impact a development project may have on the property and makes a decision. According to the decision, the Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee approves or rejects the application. With regard to the rejected application, the committee may advise the applicant to alter the plan with the assistance of relevant organs so that the project would not have a negative impact on the properties and their environment. Those who forces the plan in defiance of the decision shall be subject to legal punishment according to the Article 55 of the Law of the DPRK on City Management.

Article 55 (Duty of central city management institution)

The guidance to city management shall be provided by the central city management institution under the unified guidance of the Cabinet. The central city management institution shall get acquainted with and give guidance to city management across the country on a normal basis.

5 (d) **Existing plans related to municipality and region in which the proposed property is located**

The existing plans are composed of two plans: the Long-term Plan for Kaesong City Construction and the General Plan for Land Development of Kaesong City.

The Long-term Plan for Kaesong City Construction (prepared in 2010) describes the construction of residence, roads and forests in the buffer zone, and the General Plan for Land Development of Kaesong City (prepared in 2010) describes the forestation in the buffer zone.
5 (e) Property management plan and management system

5 (e)-1 Management Plan

The management plan for the Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong nominated for inscription on the World Heritage List has been prepared by the Korean Cultural Preservation Centre (KCPC) authorized by the National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation (NBCPC). The plan documents the short-term objectives and action plans for 5 years on the basis of the long-term objectives for 10 years.

Included in the execution of the plan are the NBCPC, the Kaesong City People’s Committee of North Hwanghae Province, the Cultural Preservation Department, the Urban Management Bureau, the Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation, the Kaesong Cooperative Farm Management Committee and the full-time management agencies such as the Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office and the Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon, as well as the scientific and research organs and also the institution charged with public management of sites. The overall execution of the management plan is guided by the NBCPC.

5 (e)-2 Management System

– Administrative system for protection of the nominated property

National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation (NBCPC)

The National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation is the supreme guidance organ which takes charge of the preservation and management of the historic sites and relics nationwide. It has several specialized departments in charge of property, construction, science and technology, museums, scenic spots, natural monuments and so on.

The NBCPC undertakes to:

- assess and register, protect and manage the property;
- prepare the regulations and policies to implement the Law on Protection of Cultural Property;
- provide directions about the works of the departments of cultural preservation under provincial people’s committees and the cultural property management offices, and guide and control the management process; and
organize the presentation and awareness-building activities for the promotion of the cultural property.

*Cultural Preservation Department of the Kaesong City People’s Committee, North Hwanghae Province*

The department takes charge of the protection and management of the cultural and natural property on the Kaesong City People’s Committee. It is in charge of the protection and management of the nominated property. Under the guidance of the NBCPC, it works out long-term and annual plans for the protection and management of the historic sites within its care, and guides and controls the cultural property management offices (the full-time management agencies under it) to execute the plans to the letter. It also responsibly guides and controls the institutions authorized with public management to protect the sites.

*Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office and Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon*

The Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office and the Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon are for the protection and management of the sites within their care under the guidance of the Cultural Preservation Department of the Kaesong City People’s Committee. They protect the sites from any potential danger of damage, undertake restoration and management of the sites and improve the surroundings. They consist of experts and craftsmen specialized in various fields such as history, architecture, masonry, carpentry, fine arts, etc., together with manpower for the restoration of the sites. They ensure a smooth process of management by consensus with the site managers and the public institutions for management of sites.

*Site managers*

Site managers are responsible for the protection and management of the sites. They have satisfactory knowledge for preserving the sites and also for guiding visitors. They develop plans for the protection and management of the sites; execute them under the administrative guidance of the cultural property management offices; and when faced with any unusual issues that may impact protection of the sites, take measures immediately and report it to their senior organs.
5. PROTECTION AND MANAGEMENT OF THE NOMINATION

**Site controllers**

Site controllers take charge of several sites and patrols them to learn the conditions of preservation and take any unusual issues to the management offices to take measures immediately.

**Institutions authorized with public management of sites**

Provincial, city and county people’s committees have allocated the cultural sites and relics to local institutions, enterprises, organizations and schools to ensure regular public management as stipulated in Article 49 of Chapter 6, the Law on Protection of Cultural Property. They participate in the protection and management of the sites and regularly monitor any acts which might affect protection of the sites under the guidance of the city and county people’s committees and the cultural property management offices. The authorized institutions participating in the on-site management of the nominated property are shown in Table 19.

### Table 19: Institutions authorized with public management of the nominated property

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Institutions</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manwoldae and Kaesong Chomsongdae</td>
<td>Kaesong Manwol Middle School</td>
<td>Songak-dong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Walls</td>
<td>Kaesong Sungjon Middle School</td>
<td>Sungjon-dong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kaesong Songdo Cooperative Farm</td>
<td>Songak-dong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kaesong Tokam Cooperative Farm</td>
<td>Tokam-ri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
<td>Kaesong Manwol Middle School</td>
<td>Pukan-dong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koryo Songgyungwan</td>
<td>Koryo Museum</td>
<td>Pangjik-dong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sungyang Sowon</td>
<td>Kaesong Tonghon Middle School</td>
<td>Sonjuk-dong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments</td>
<td>Kaesong Unhak Middle School</td>
<td>Sonjuk-dong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kwandok Pavilion</td>
<td>Kaesong Janam-dong Office</td>
<td>Janam-dong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td>Kaesong Haeson Cooperative Farm</td>
<td>Haeson-ri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seven Tombs Cluster</td>
<td>Kaesong Haeson Cooperative Farm</td>
<td>Haeson-ri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myongrung Cluster</td>
<td>Kaesong Haeson Cooperative Farm</td>
<td>Haeson-ri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>Kaephung Agricultural University</td>
<td>Kaephung-dong</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. Protection and Management of the Nomination

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

Figure 96: Public management of the property

— Consultation system

Apart from the administrative system, there is the Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee, a non-standing organization. This committee includes the head officials of various fields such as education, culture, construction, land and environment and agriculture together with those of relevant social organizations and the judicial and procuratorial institutions in Kaesong (see Appendix 5).

The committee meets twice a year to discuss the implementation of the national policies and laws related to the protection of cultural property and take proper measures. It has a discussion on the issues proposed by the Cultural Preservation Department of the Kaesong City People’s Committee, assigns tasks to its staff and has the authority to call to account under criminal law, if needed.

— Research works on the sites

Historical and archaeological research on the sites is carried out by the Institute of Archaeology and Institute of History in the Academy of Social Sciences, History Faculty of the Kim Il Sung University and the Korean Cultural Preservation Centre (KCPC). Scientific and technical research for the conservation of sites is carried out at the KCPC. The NBCPC, if necessary, requests the National
Academy of Science to carry out specific research and the research results are applied to the historical sites by the KCPC.

– Administrative system for protection of the buffer zone

**Ministry of Urban Management**

The Ministry of Urban Management is the central guidance organ, which organizes and guides, under the guidance of the Cabinet, the management of all the cities in the country. The ministry formulates regulations and policies related to city management, clarifies directions of work for the Urban Management Bureaus of the provincial (or cities under the direct jurisdiction of the central authority) people’s committees and regulates their work for city management.

**Urban Management Bureau of the North Hwanghae Provincial People’s Committee**

The Urban Management Bureau is a provincial-level organ that organizes and guides in a unified way city management in the counties (cities). Under the guidance of the Ministry of Urban Management, it formulates long-term and annual plans for city management in the towns of counties (cities) and guides their correct execution.

**Urban Management Bureau of the Kaesong City People’s Committee**

Under the guidance of the Urban Management Bureau of the North Hwanghae Provincial People’s Committee, the Urban Management Bureau of the Kaesong City People’s Committee, a county-level organ, supervises city management in Kaesong, such as repairing houses, public buildings, drainage and sewage network, roads, parks, recreation grounds and other public facilities and sprucing up the city. Under the bureau are the House Repairing Office, Public Building Repairing Office, Water Supply and Drainage Office, City Management Construction Materials Enterprise, Botanical Garden, Tree Nursery, Horticultural Office, Structures Maintenance Office, City Management Designing Office, City Management Materials Agency, City Management Supervision Team, Land and Structures Building Registration Office and other specialized city management organs.

**Ministry of Land and Environmental Conservation**

The Ministry of Land and Environmental Conservation is a central guidance organ under the Cabinet that organizes, guides, supervises and controls in a unified way the land and environment conservation of the country. It formulates regulations and policies related to land and environment conservation,
clarifies directions of work for the land and environment conservation management bureaus of provinces (or cities under the direct jurisdiction of the central authority), and regulates their implementation.

**Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation of the North Hwanghae Provincial People’s Committee**

The Management Bureau is a provincial-level organ, which, under the guidance of the Ministry of Land and Environmental Conservation, formulates long-term and annual plans according to the regulations and policies for land and environmental conservation, and conducts its activities through the land and environment conservation management bureaus of the county (city) people’s committee.

**Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation of the Kaesong City People’s Committee**


**Ministry of Agriculture**

The Ministry of Agriculture is a central guidance organ that organizes and guides overall agricultural production of the country, under the Cabinet. It formulates regulations and policies related with agriculture, gives directions of work to the rural economy committees of provinces (or cities under the direct jurisdiction of the central authority), and regulates their implementation.

**Rural Economy Committee of North Hwanghae Province**

The Rural Economy Committee is a provincial-level guidance organ which organizes and directs overall agricultural production in the province. It formulates long-term and annual plans for agricultural production, gives directions of work to the cooperative farms management committee of every county (city), and regulates their implementation.
Kaesong Cooperative Farm Management Committee

The Kaesong Cooperative Farm Management Committee is a county-level guidance organ that manages the cooperative farms in Kaesong city, under the Rural Economy Committee of North Hwanghae Province. It conducts its activities through the cooperative farms, factories and enterprises belonging to it.

5 (f) **Source and scale of finance**

The budget for the protection and management of the nominated property is classified into national budget and local budget. The national and local budgets necessary for the protection and management of historic sites are provided under the Law for the Protection of Cultural Property (Article 51 of Chapter 6). The NBCPC requests funds for large-scale restoration, investigation and excavation, scientific research and education from the national budget through the state planning agency and financial institutions; while the Department of Cultural Preservation under the Kaesong City People’s Committee in North Hwanghae Province requests funds for the establishment of service facilities from the local budget. A part of the income from visits is used for the management of sites.

5 (g) **Sources of expertise and education for techniques of conservation and management**

Most of the staff in the field of cultural conservation are experts in various fields including history and natural sciences. Scientific studies of historic sites and technical research into their conservation are carried out by the KCPC. The KCPC is a comprehensive base for scientific research and publications. It researches historical properties for their scientific identification and assessment; takes technical measures to conserve them in their original state; and introduces them at home and abroad by various kinds of publication. The staff members of KCPC are graduates of universities who majored in various branches of knowledge including history, architecture, fine arts, physics, chemistry, etc.

The experts and technicians in the field of cultural conservation are recruited every year from the graduates of several universities including **Kim Il Sung University**. The NBCPC regularly organizes training courses for its experts and craftsmen to improve their skills and knowledge. The researchers from either the KCPC or the Academy of Science and the professors of universities are invited as lecturers.
5 (h) Facilities and statistics for visit

At present, Koryo Songgyungwan, Sungyang Sowon, Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments, Mausoleums of King Wang Kon and King Kongmin are open to the public. All these sites have explanatory signs for visitors. The sites have driveways and parking areas; however, there are no driveways and visitor tracks around the Kaesong Walls and Manwoldae. Janamsan Hotel and Folk Hotel are used for lodging foreign visitors. The open sites have the following service facilities notified in Table 20.

Table 20: Present service facilities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of Property</th>
<th>Parking Capacity (bus)</th>
<th>Toilet</th>
<th>Number of Guides</th>
<th>Shop (㎡)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Koryo Songgyungwan</td>
<td>5 - 6</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sungyang Sowon</td>
<td>2 - 3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td>9 - 10</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>8 - 9</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 97: Visitors to Koryo Songgyungwan

In line with the increase in the number of visitors in the future, it is planned to build or expand the service facilities including shops and food stalls, visitor tracks and parking lots as well as to increase
the number of guides. These facilities should be designed in such a way not to affect the settings of the property. Provided that any foreign enterprises wanted to develop the infrastructure for tourism in Kaesong, the development details should be submitted to the Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee, and on the basis of the review of the NBCPC.

Figure 98: Parking lot at the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon

Figure 99: Explanatory board at the Mausoleum of King Kongmin

The number of visitors has recently been increasing as tourism to the historical sites in Kaesong has developed. The number of visitors from 2005 to 2008 is shown in Table 21.
5. PROTECTION AND MANAGEMENT OF THE NOMINATION

5 (i) Policies and programs for understanding and promotion of the property

The overarching aim of these policies and programs is to give the people and future generations a deep understanding of their cultural heritage, not only through the mass media but also through a visit to the museums and historic sites, so that they can have a high sense of national pride; at the same time, to give foreigners an easy way to understanding Korean history and culture.

Programs related to the presentation and promotion of the cultural property

• To compile and publish guidelines and illustrated booklets introducing the history and culture of Kaesong in close contact with the KCPC;

• To put a presentation of cultural heritage in the magazine “National cultural heritage” and introduce the historical sites on TV, radio and newspapers by plan;

• To install visual introduction and explanation boards at the nominated property including Kaesong Walls, Manwoldae and Mausoleum of King Kongmin to help visitors fully understand the sites;

• To further increase the information about the relics exhibited in museums according to ongoing archaeological research on the historic sites in Kaesong; and

• To organize extra-curricular education on World Heritage at schools and publish reference books for students.

Table 21: Visitor statistics (2005–2008)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Koryo Songgyungwan</th>
<th>Sungyang Sowon</th>
<th>Sonjuk Bridge &amp; Phyochung Monuments</th>
<th>Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</th>
<th>Mausoleum of King Kongmin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2005</td>
<td>18,670</td>
<td>5,950</td>
<td>8,110</td>
<td>15,510</td>
<td>8,500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2006</td>
<td>21,160</td>
<td>6,500</td>
<td>8,840</td>
<td>15,770</td>
<td>8,960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2007</td>
<td>21,820</td>
<td>7,150</td>
<td>10,370</td>
<td>15,810</td>
<td>9,460</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2008</td>
<td>23,330</td>
<td>7,340</td>
<td>10,690</td>
<td>15,820</td>
<td>9,920</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5 (j) **Staffing levels (professional, technical, maintenance)**

There are experts, technicians with university diplomas and an adequate number of craftsmen for the day-to-day management of the property. The Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office has two historians, two architects, two designers, three painters, a physician, a chemist, a landscape architect as well as several craftsmen such as a carpenter, tile layer, plasterer, mason, etc. The experts and technicians patrol all the sites every year to get a clear understanding of their state of conservation, take necessary measures and also give technical guidance to the restoration work with a supply of designs. The Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon employs a historian, a construction engineer, a physician, a chemist and two landscape architects as well as some craftsmen such as a carpenter, mason and horticulturist. The technicians deal with the changes in temperature and humidity in the tomb chamber, discoloration of mural paintings and separation of renders, while the horticulturists take care of trees and turf around the tomb.

Training courses for the experts and technicians are organized once a year by the KCPC.
6. MONITORING

6 (a) Key indicators for measuring state of conservation
6 (b) Administrative arrangements for monitoring property
6 (c) Results of previous reporting exercises
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
6. **MONITORING**

6 (a) **Key indicators for measuring state of conservation**

The key indicators for measuring the state of conservation of the nominated property are shown in Table 22.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Core Zones</th>
<th>Indicators</th>
<th>Periodicity</th>
<th>Location of Records</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Timber buildings</td>
<td>Size of cracks on timber materials</td>
<td>Once a month</td>
<td>Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Area of discoloration of the paintings</td>
<td>Once a year</td>
<td>Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office, Korean Cultural Preservation Centre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone structures (stone wall, tombs, monuments, bridge, stone parts of buildings)</td>
<td>Decayed area of stone surfaces</td>
<td>Once a year</td>
<td>Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Plants covering stone structures</td>
<td>Once a year</td>
<td>Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Area of the plants covering the stone structures</td>
<td>Once a year</td>
<td>Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earthen wall</td>
<td>Plants growing on earthen wall and their distribution</td>
<td>Once a year</td>
<td>Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td>Cracks in the walls of burial chamber</td>
<td>Once a month</td>
<td>Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Area of detached render on the walls of burial chamber</td>
<td>Once in three months</td>
<td>Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Area of mural paintings affected by salt deposits and propagation of micro-organisms</td>
<td>Once every three months</td>
<td>Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Discoloration of mural paintings</td>
<td>Once a year</td>
<td>Korean Cultural Preservation Centre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6 (b) Administrative arrangements for monitoring property

Site managers for relevant sites, full-time management agencies, institutions guiding management and related scientific research institutes are involved in monitoring activities.

- The NBCPC leads and controls the monitoring activities. It gives directions for monitoring activities to the Kaesong City People’s Committee and the cultural property management offices; it regularly acquaints itself with the observation and management situations and takes measures to improve the level of monitoring and management.

- The executive units of monitoring activities are the Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office and the Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon. These management offices undertake monitoring and management of the historical sites under their care under the guidance of the NBCPC and the Cultural Preservation Department of the Kaesong City...
6. MONITORING

People’s Committee. They appoint site managers in charge of an individual site, check their management work, give instructions and take concrete measures to solve pending problems.

- Site managers are directly in charge of the monitoring activities. They record the results of monitoring exactly and submit them in time in accordance with the daily, periodic and emergency reporting system.

- Monitoring through specific scientific and technical means and facilities is entrusted to the relevant department of the Korean Cultural Preservation Centre by the NBCPC.

Involved in monitoring activities in addition are the Urban Management Bureau and the Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation of Kaesong City People’s Committee and the Kaesong Cooperative Farm Management Committee in order to keep a balance between the conservation of sites and the regional development. Their range of work covers all kinds of development in the proposed buffer zone through their affiliated full-time management agencies.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Institution</th>
<th>Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation</td>
<td>Oesong-dong, Central district, Pyongyang city.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tel: +850-2-381-18111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fax: +850-2-381-4410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>E-mail: <a href="mailto:nbcpc@co.chesin.com">nbcpc@co.chesin.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean Cultural Preservation Centre</td>
<td>Thongil-dong No.2, Rangnang District, Pyongyang City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office</td>
<td>Kwanhung-dong, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td>Kwanhung-dong, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong City People’s Committee</td>
<td>Pukan-dong, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urban Management Bureau of Kaesong City People’s Committee</td>
<td>Pukan-dong, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation of Kaesong City People’s Committee</td>
<td>Songak-dong, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Cooperative Farm Management Committee</td>
<td>Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6 (c) Results of previous reporting exercises (provide title and brief summary of each of the reports mentioned below)

- “Survey report on the historical sites in Kaesong City” (issued by Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office in 2009) describes the location, settings, current state of conservation and indicates the management state, repair or renovation, and further actions.

- “The report on the treatment for mural paintings of the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon” (issued by KCPC in June, 2006) describes the technical work for the reinforcement of detached renders in the burial chamber of the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon, which was undertaken in consultation with the international mural painting restorer Rodolfo Lujan Lunsford in 2006.

- “Former interventions at the historical sites in Kaesong” (issued by Kaesong Cultural Relics Management Office in 2009) describes the various works of the large-scale and medium-scale repair projects of the nominated property and the work-day units and finances.

- “The annual work reports” (issued by Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office) describe the annual process of management and preservation for the historical sites in Kaesong.

- “The annual reviewing report” (issued by the Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon) describes the annual process of management and preservation for the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon.


- “The budget for the repair of the Kaesong Namdae Gate” (issued by Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office on October 29, 1998) describes the budget for replacement of the decayed wooden elements and replacement of the bricks of the floor at the Gate.

- “The budget for the repair of the pavilion of Pyochung Monuments” (issued by the Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office on February 2, 1999) describes the budget for replacement of the decayed wooden elements including decayed tiles and rafter, and repainting the discoloured part at the houses.

- “The budget for the repair of Koryo Songgyungwan” (issued by Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office on April 8, 2004) describes the budget for replacement of the decayed wooden elements including tiles, three posts and gable of the outer triple gate in Koryo Songgyungwan.
7 (a) Photographs, slides, image inventory and authorization table and other audiovisual materials
7 (b) Texts relating to protective designation, copies of property management plans or documented management systems and extracts of other plans relevant to the property
7 (c) Form and date of most recent records or inventory of property
7 (d) Address where inventory, records and archives are held
7 (e) Bibliography
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
7. DOCUMENTATION

7 (a) Photographs, slides, image inventory and authorization table and other audiovisual materials

For a list of photographs, see Table 23.

Table 23: Image inventory and photograph and audiovisual authorization form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Id. No</th>
<th>Format (slide/print/video)</th>
<th>Caption</th>
<th>Date of Photo (mm/yy)</th>
<th>Photographer</th>
<th>Copyright Owner</th>
<th>Contact Details of Copyright Owner</th>
<th>Non-exclusive Cession of Rights</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>General view of Manwoldae against Mt. Songak</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Four Great Staircases before the site of Hoegyong Hall, Manwoldae</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>General view of the site of Hoegyong Hall, Monwoldae</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Foundation stones at the site of Hoegyong Hall, Monwoldae</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Site of Sinbong Gate, Monwoldae</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Site of Changhap Gate, Monwoldae</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>General view of the site of Western Group of Buildings, Monwoldae</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Foundation stones at Western Group of Buildings, Monwoldae</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Terrace for Rimchon Pavilion, Monwoldae</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id. No</td>
<td>Format (slide/print/video)</td>
<td>Caption</td>
<td>Date of Photo (mm/yy)</td>
<td>Photographer</td>
<td>Copyright Owner</td>
<td>Contact Details of Copyright Owner</td>
<td>Non-exclusive Cession of Rights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Western terrace of Central Group of Buildings, Monwoldae</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Remains of Kaesong Chomsongdae</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Upper part of Kaesong Chomsongdae</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Details of corner linking of Kaesong Chomsongdae</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Western part of Outer Wall, Kaesong Walls</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Northern part of Outer Wall, Kaesong Walls</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Pukchang Gate of Outer Wall, Kaesong Walls</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Nulli Gate of Outer Wall, Kaesong Walls</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Outer Wall of Kaesong Walls</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Sluice of Outer Wall, Kaesong Walls</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Side view of Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Columns of Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
<td>2010.5</td>
<td>Ryu Dae Hyon</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id. No.</td>
<td>Format (slide/print/video)</td>
<td>Caption</td>
<td>Date of Photo (mm/yy)</td>
<td>Photographer</td>
<td>Copyright Owner</td>
<td>Contact Details of Copyright Owner</td>
<td>Non-exclusive Cession of Rights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Exterior brackets of Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
<td>2010.5</td>
<td>Ryu Dae Hyon</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Interior brackets of Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
<td>2010.5</td>
<td>Ryu Dae Hyon</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Corner bracket of Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
<td>2010.5</td>
<td>Ryu Dae Hyon</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Ceiling structure of Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
<td>2010.5</td>
<td>Ryu Dae Hyon</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Lotus flower patterns of Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
<td>2010.5</td>
<td>Ryu Dae Hyon</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>General view of Koryo Songgyungwan</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Lecture-hall Compound of Koryo Songgyungwan</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Thaesong Hall of Koryo Songgyungwan</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Myongryun Hall of Koryo Songgyungwan</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Interior of Myongryun Hall, Koryo Songgyungwan</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Western Shrine of Koryo Songgyungwan</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>East Dormitory of Koryo Songgyungwan</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Gyesong Shrine of Koryo Songgyungwan</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 7. DOCUMENTATION

#### NOMINATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Id. No</th>
<th>Format (slide/print/video)</th>
<th>Caption</th>
<th>Date of Photo (mm/yy)</th>
<th>Photographer</th>
<th>Copyright Owner</th>
<th>Contact Details of Copyright Owner</th>
<th>Non-exclusive Cession of Rights</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>General view of Sungyang Sowon</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Lecture-hall Compound of Sungyang Sowon</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Stairs up to the Shrine Compound, Sungyang Sowon</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Shrine of Sungyang Sowon</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Interior of Lecture-hall, Sungyang Sowon</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Ceiling structure of Lecture-hall, Sungyang Sowon</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Memorial tablets of Confucian scholars in the east room of shrine, Sungyang Sowon</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Portrait of Jong Mong Ju in the west room of shrine, Sungyang Sowon</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Sonjuk Bridge</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Monument to Sonjuk Bridge</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Pavilion for Phyochung Monuments</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 7. DOCUMENTATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Id. No</th>
<th>Format (slide/print/video)</th>
<th>Caption</th>
<th>Date of Photo (mm/yy)</th>
<th>Photographer</th>
<th>Copyright Owner</th>
<th>Contact Details of Copyright Owner</th>
<th>Non-exclusive Cession of Rights</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Phyochung Monuments</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Distant view of Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>General view of Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Stele pavilions at Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Marker of Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Monument to the repair of Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Entrance to the burial chamber of Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>West wall paintings of burial chamber, Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Li Yin Chol</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>East wall paintings of burial chamber, Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Mausoleum of King Wang Kon before reconstruction</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Distant view of Seven Tombs Cluster</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Tomb No.1 of Seven Tombs Cluster</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Tomb No.2 of Seven Tombs Cluster</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Tomb No.3 of Seven Tombs Cluster</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id. No</td>
<td>Format (slide/print/video)</td>
<td>Caption</td>
<td>Date of Photo (mm/yy)</td>
<td>Photographer</td>
<td>Copyright Owner</td>
<td>Contact Details of Copyright Owner</td>
<td>Non-exclusive Cession of Rights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Tomb No.4 of Seven Tombs Cluster</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Tomb No.5 of Seven Tombs Cluster</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Tomb No.6 of Seven Tombs Cluster</td>
<td>1981.5</td>
<td>Kim Dong Il</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Tomb No.7 of Seven Tombs Cluster</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Distant view of Myongrung Cluster</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Tomb No.1 of Myongrung Cluster</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Tomb No.2 of Myongrung Cluster</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Tomb No.3 of Myongrung Cluster</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Distant view of Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>General view of Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Arrangements before the mounds of Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Stone railings of Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Stone lantern of Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Stone pillar of Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tongil-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Id. No</td>
<td>Format (slide/print/video)</td>
<td>Caption</td>
<td>Date of Photo (mm/yy)</td>
<td>Photographer</td>
<td>Copy-right Owner</td>
<td>Contact Details of Copyright Owner</td>
<td>Non-exclusive Cession of Rights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Stone tigers of Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tong-il-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Stone sheep of Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tong-il-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Statues of civil officials of Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tong-il-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Statue of a military official of Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tong-il-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Acha Peak in front of Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tong-il-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Twelve zodiac figures engraved on screen slabs of Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tong-il-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Patterns engraved on screen slabs of Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tong-il-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Monument to Kwangthongbojeson Temple</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tong-il-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Murals of twelve zodiac figures in burial chamber of Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tong-il-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Mt. Songak and Monwoldae</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tong-il-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Parking lot at Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tong-il-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Road to Sonjuk Bridge</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tong-il-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>Digital</td>
<td>Explanatory board at Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>2009.7</td>
<td>Jo Man Song</td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td>Tong-il-dong No.2, Rangrang District, Pyongyang City</td>
<td>Gratuitous conveyance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7 (b) **Texts relating to protective designation, copies of property management plans or documented management systems and extracts of other plans relevant to the property**

7(b)-1 Texts relating to protective designation

I. Decision No.1 of the State Historical Property Deliberation and Evaluation Committee (August 13, 1972)

II. Decision No.3 of the State Historical Property Deliberation and Evaluation Committee (December 14, 1973)
I

Decision No.1 of the State Historical Property Deliberation and Evaluation Committee

(August 13, 1972)

To the National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation

On informing of the appraised historical sites

The State Historical Property Deliberation and Evaluation Committee hopes that committees, ministries, general bureaus and relevant organs take necessary measures for the preservation of the historical sites appraised as “National Treasures” and hereunder notified with an appendix.

State Historical Property Deliberation and Evaluation Committee,

Pyongyang, DPRK

Appendix

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Name of Property</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Manwoldae</td>
<td>Songak-dong, Kaesong City</td>
<td>Koryo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Kaesong Chomsongdae</td>
<td>Songak-dong, Kaesong City</td>
<td>Koryo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Kaesong Wall</td>
<td>Songak-dong, Kaesong City</td>
<td>Koryo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
<td>Songak-dong, Kaesong City</td>
<td>Late Koryo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Koryo Songgyungwan</td>
<td>Pangjik-dong, Kaesong City</td>
<td>Ri Dynasty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Sungyang Sowon</td>
<td>Sonjuk-dong, Kaesong City</td>
<td>Ri Dynasty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Sonjuk Bridge</td>
<td>Sonjuk-dong, Kaesong City</td>
<td>Koryo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Phyochung Monuments</td>
<td>Sonjuk-dong, Kaesong City</td>
<td>Ri Dynasty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td>Haeson-ri, Kaesong City</td>
<td>Koryo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>Haeson-ri, Kaesong City</td>
<td>Koryo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
II

Decision No.3 of the State Historical Property Deliberation and Evaluation Committee

(December 14, 1973)

To the National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation

On informing of the appraised historical sites

The State Historical Property Deliberation and Evaluation Committee hopes that committees, ministries, general bureaus and relevant organs take necessary measures for the preservation of the historical sites appraised as “Conservation” and hereunder notified with an appendix.

State Historical Property Deliberation and Evaluation Committee,

Pyongyang, DPRK

Appendix

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Name of Property</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Seven Tombs Cluster</td>
<td>Haeson-ri, Kaesong City</td>
<td>Koryo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Myongrung Cluster</td>
<td>Haeson-ri, Kaesong City</td>
<td>Koryo</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7(b)-2 Laws

See laws related to the protection of cultural property in Appendix 4.

I. THE LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA ON PROTECTION OF CULTURAL PROPERTY (24/03/1994)

II. THE LAND LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA (29/04/1977)

III. THE LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA ON ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION (9/04/1986)

IV. THE LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA ON CITY MANAGEMENT (29/01/1992)

V. THE FOREST LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA (11/12/1992)

7(b)-3 Management Plan of the nominated property

Please see the Management Plan of the Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong.

7(b)-4 Other plans relevant to the property

I. Long-term Plan for Urban Construction of Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province (extracts)

II. General Plan for Land Development of Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province(extracts)
I

Long-term Plan for Urban Construction of Kaesong City (Extracts)

Designed by the Kaesong City Designing Institute in 2010

– City development and distribution and scale of public buildings and residential areas
  • Distribution of public buildings and residential areas shall not harm the environment of historical sites and observe the principle of keeping them in their original state.

– Landscaping plan
  • Small parks or flowerbeds and greensward shall be created around cultural relics so that they can serve as cultural recreation centers.

Map 30: Long-term Plan for Urban Construction in Kaesong
II

General Plan for Land Development of Kaesong City, (Extracts)

*Designed by the Kaesong City People’s Committee, North Hwanghae Province in 2010*

The plan for land development is a unified and comprehensive program for land development aimed at prospective and planned management of the nation’s economic life.

– Measures shall be taken to protect cities, villages, holiday resorts, scenic spots, natural monuments and cultural relics.

• Forests around the Mausoleums of King Wang Kon and King Kongmin shall be proclaimed reserves and put under tight control so that their scenic beauty is not impaired.

• All the roads shall be paved with cement or stone, the strength of their surface and technical condition improved and their safety and modernity ensured.

– Measures shall be taken to prevent environmental pollution.

• Organs and enterprises shall strictly observe the limit of environmental pollution (disposal of wastes, noise, vibration, etc.).
7(b)-5 Management system for the nominated property

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
7(c) **Form and date of most recent records or inventory of the property**

The most recent and comprehensive records about the nominated property are in the “Following the Old Traces of Kaesong” published in 2003 and in “Illustrated Book of Ruins and Relics of Korea” (Vols. 10, 11, 14, 16 and 20) published between June 1991 and February 1996, and photographs taken in 2010.

7(d) **Address where inventory, records and archives are held**

The related books and publications are kept in the KCPC, the Korean Central History Museum, the Archaeological Institute of the Academy of Social Sciences, the Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Institution</th>
<th>Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Korean Cultural Preservation Centre (KCPC)</td>
<td>Thongil-dong No.2, Rangnang District, Pyongyang City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean Central History Museum</td>
<td>Taedongmun-dong, Central District, Pyongyang City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archaeological Institute of the Academy of Social Sciences</td>
<td>Taedongmun-dong, Central District, Pyongyang City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office</td>
<td>Kwanhung-dong, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7(e) Bibliography

See Table 24 for Bibliography.

Table 24: List of References

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>№</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Writer</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Publisher</th>
<th>Place of Publication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Sonhwabongsakoryodogyong</td>
<td>So Gung</td>
<td>1124</td>
<td>Kunthaek Bookshop</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Koryosa</td>
<td>Kim Jong So, Jong Rin Ji</td>
<td>1451</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Koryosa-jolyo</td>
<td>Kim Jong So, Jong Rin Ji</td>
<td>1452</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Sejongsilokjiriji (True record of King Sejong)</td>
<td>Yun Hui</td>
<td>1454</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Sinjungdonggukyojisungnam</td>
<td>Ri Haeng</td>
<td>1530</td>
<td>Academy of Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Koryogodojing</td>
<td>Han Jae Ryom</td>
<td>1911</td>
<td>Korean Bibliopole Publishing House</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Junggyongji</td>
<td>Kim Don Hui</td>
<td>1915</td>
<td>Korean Kwangmun Organ</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Kaesongji</td>
<td>Rim Bong Sik</td>
<td>1934</td>
<td>Kaesongji Compiling House</td>
<td>Kaesong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Jungbomunhonbigo</td>
<td>Pak Dae Yong</td>
<td>1908</td>
<td>Academy of Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Illustrated Book of Korean Historical Sites (Vol. 6)</td>
<td>Sekino Ikeutsi</td>
<td>1918</td>
<td>Oozuka Art Publishing House</td>
<td>Tokyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Illustrated Book of Korean Historical Sites (Vol. 7)</td>
<td>Sekino Ikeutsi</td>
<td>1920</td>
<td>Oozuka Art Publishing House</td>
<td>Tokyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Koryowangrungji (Royal tombs in Koryo)</td>
<td>Kawaguchi</td>
<td>1927</td>
<td>Kaesong Library</td>
<td>Kaesong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Historical Sites in Songdo</td>
<td>Ko Yu Sob</td>
<td>1949</td>
<td>Ulyu Publishing House</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Taekli-jii</td>
<td>Ri Jung Hwan</td>
<td>1964</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>History Dictionary (Vols. 1 and 2)</td>
<td>Historical Institute of the Academy of Social Sciences</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Geography Dictionary (Vol.1)</td>
<td>Geography Dictionary Writing Committee</td>
<td>1972</td>
<td>Kim Il Sung University Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>History and Science, (No. 1)</td>
<td>Pak Yong Hae</td>
<td>1976</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>№</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Writer</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Publisher</td>
<td>Place of Publication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>History of Korean Culture</td>
<td>Mun Song Ryob</td>
<td>1977</td>
<td>Science and Encyclopedia Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>General History of Korea (Vols. 6, 7 and 8)</td>
<td>Historical Institute of the Academy of Social Sciences</td>
<td>1979</td>
<td>Science and Encyclopedia Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>General History of Korea (Vols. 9, 10, 11 and 12)</td>
<td>Historical Institute of the Academy of Social Sciences</td>
<td>1980</td>
<td>Science and Encyclopedia Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>History and Science, (Nos. 2 and 3)</td>
<td>Jon Ryong Chol</td>
<td>1980</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Historical Relics in Korea</td>
<td>Institute for Cultural Conservation</td>
<td>1983</td>
<td>Science and Encyclopedia Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (Nos. 1, 2, 3 and 4)</td>
<td>Kaesong Excavation Team, Jang Sang Ryol</td>
<td>1986</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (No. 2)</td>
<td>Han In Ho</td>
<td>1987</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>History and Science (No. 1)</td>
<td>Wang Song Su</td>
<td>1989</td>
<td>Science and Encyclopedia Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (No. 1 and 3)</td>
<td>Jong Chan Yong, Jang Sang Ryol</td>
<td>1989</td>
<td>Science and Encyclopedia Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (No. 2)</td>
<td>Wang Song Su</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>Academy of Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Koryo Paintings</td>
<td>Ri Chol</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>Art Education Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (No. 2)</td>
<td>Ri Chang En</td>
<td>1991</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Illustrated Book of Ruins and Relics of Korea (Vol. 10)</td>
<td>Compilation Committee of the Illustrated Book of Ruins and Relics of Korea</td>
<td>1991</td>
<td>Foreign Languages Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>№</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Writer</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Publisher</td>
<td>Place of Publication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Illustrated Book of Ruins and Relics of Korea (Vol. 11)</td>
<td>Compilation Committee of the Illustrated Book of Ruins and Relics of Korea</td>
<td>1992</td>
<td>Foreign Languages Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Illustrated Book of Ruins and Relics of Korea (Vols. 14 and 15)</td>
<td>Compilation Committee of the Illustrated Book of Ruins and Relics of Korea</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>Foreign Languages Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (No. 4)</td>
<td>Om Yong Chan</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (No. 3)</td>
<td>Han In Ho</td>
<td>1994</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Illustrated Book of Ruins and Relics of Korea (Vol. 20)</td>
<td>Compilation Committee of the Illustrated Book of Ruins and Relics of Korea</td>
<td>1996</td>
<td>Foreign Languages Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Study on Kaegyong of the Koryo Era</td>
<td>Pak Yong Un</td>
<td>1996</td>
<td>Iiji Publishing House</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (No. 3)</td>
<td>Kim In Chol</td>
<td>1997</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (No. 3)</td>
<td>Ri Chang On</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (No. 2)</td>
<td>An Song Gyu</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (No. 1)</td>
<td>Ri In Sok</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Following the old traces of Kaesong</td>
<td>Jon Ryong Chol</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Art and Literature Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Biographical Dictionary of Korean History</td>
<td>Historical Institute of the Academy of Social Sciences</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Science and Encyclopedia Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Kaegyong, the imperial capital of Koryo</td>
<td>Kang Ho Son</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Creation and Criticism Publishing House</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology, No.1</td>
<td>Ri Chang On, Kim In Chol</td>
<td>2003</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>Study on Koryo Sites</td>
<td>Ri Chang On</td>
<td>2003</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Chronological Table of the Korean History</td>
<td>Historical Institute of the Academy of Social Sciences</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>Science and Encyclopedia Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8. CONTACT INFORMATION OF RESPONSIBLE AUTHORITIES

8 (a) Preparer
8 (b) Official Local Institution / Agency
8 (c) Other Local Institution
8 (d) Official Web Address
8. CONTACT INFORMATION OF N Nomination

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
8. CONTACT INFORMATION OF RESPONSIBLE AUTHORITIES

8 (a) Preparer

Name; Jo Yong Phal
Title; Director of the Korean Cultural Preservation Centre
Address; Thongil-dong No.2, Rangnang District
City, Province/State, Country; Pyongyang City, DPR Korea
Telephone; +850-2-381-18111
Fax; +850-2-381-4410
E-mail; nbcpc@co.chesin.com

8 (b) Official Local Institution /Agency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Official Local Institution/Agency</th>
<th>Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation</td>
<td>Oesong-dong, Yonggwang Street, Central District, Pyongyang City</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cultural Preservation Department of the Kaesong City People’s Committee, North Hwanghae Province</td>
<td>Pukan-dong, Kaesong City, and North Hwanghae Province</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Contact with the UNESCO will be established with the NBCPC.

8 (c) Other Local Institutions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Other Local Institution</th>
<th>Address</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office</td>
<td>Kwanhung-dong, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td>Haeson-ri, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8 (d) **Official Web Address**

There is no official web address.

Contact name: Yun Jong Min, Director of the Department of Foreign Affairs, NBCPC

E-mail: nbpc@co.chesin.com
9. SIGNATURE ON BEHALF OF THE STATE PARTY
9. SIGNATURE ON BEHALF OF THE STATE...
9. SIGNATURE ON BEHALF OF THE STATE PARTY

Signed (on behalf of State party):

Full name: Ryong Ju

Title: Director General of the NBCPC, DPRK

Date: January 17th, 2011
9. SIGNATURE ON BEHALF OF THE STATE NOMINATION

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
APPENDICES

Appendix 1. Glossary
Appendix 2. Chronological Table of the History of Kaesong
Appendix 3. Letter of Authorization for Photographs used in Nomination Documents
Appendix 4. Laws Related with Protection of Cultural Heritage
Appendix 5. Structure of Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
## Appendix 1: Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Trayastrimsa Heaven</strong>&lt;br&gt;(Thirty-three Heaven)</td>
<td>Heaven of the Thirty-Three Gods, second of the six heavens of the world of desire in Buddhism.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anhwa Gate</strong></td>
<td>Though different in name, it is guessed to be identical with the Taehwa Gate of the Imperial Wall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Travels of Marco Polo</strong></td>
<td>Book in the form of a travelogue written by Lusdeigero after listening to Marco Polo’s impression of the East.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Buddhism</strong></td>
<td>A religion and philosophical system of central and eastern Asia, founded in India in the 6th century BC by Buddha; came to Korea through China in 372.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Changan</strong></td>
<td>Xian in China had been called Changan for a long time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chimjon</strong></td>
<td>Palace for king’s bedroom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chok</strong></td>
<td>Measuring unit used in the old East. One <em>chok</em> corresponds to 30 cm today.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Confucianism</strong></td>
<td>Ethical teaching founded in China in the 5th century BC; came to Korea during the Koguryo dynasty (late 4th century).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Five major bells in Korea</strong></td>
<td>Yonbok Temple bell in Kaesong, Sangwon Temple bell in Phyongchang, Pongdok Temple bell in Kyongju, Songgo Temple bell in Chonan, and Sangwon Temple bell in Jophyong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hubaekje</strong></td>
<td>A state that occupied some parts of the southwest of the Korean Peninsula between 900 and 936.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hyanggyo</strong></td>
<td>Educational institution that provided Confucian education to the children of officials in villages during the Koryo and Ri dynasties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hyangsil</strong></td>
<td>Structure for storing incense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Jaan (Pukchang) Gate</strong></td>
<td>Though different in name, it is believed to be identical with Konhwa Gate of the Imperial Wall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Jongjon</strong></td>
<td>Palace for king’s affairs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Jongyong House</strong></td>
<td>Structure for storing Confucian scriptures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Jusan</strong></td>
<td>Typical mountain, which, according to the theory of geomancy, incarnates the luck of an area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Koguryo</strong></td>
<td>A state in the north Korean Peninsula and northeast China from 277 BC to AD 668.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Koryosa</strong></td>
<td>Book that describes the history of Koryo in detail. It came off the press in 1451, in the early days of the Ri dynasty, successor to Koryo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kukhak</strong></td>
<td>Highest institution of learning built and run by the state for educating national officials. It corresponds to a present-day national university.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kukjagam</strong></td>
<td>National educational institution of Koryo built in 992, and predecessor of Songgyungwan. It was first situated near the Hoebin Gate in the southern part of Kaesong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kyongju Observatory</strong></td>
<td>Kyongju was the capital of the Silla dynasty (57BC – AD935), and the astronomical observatory was built there in the first half of the 7th century BC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lantern festival</strong></td>
<td>Buddhist ceremony held to pray for the blessing of Buddha with lanterns lit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Manwoldae</strong></td>
<td>The name was originated during the Ri dynasty from that its landform looked like the full moon. Later the word denoted the site of the royal palace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Metaphysics</strong></td>
<td>Objective idealistic philosophy originated in North Song of China in the 11th – 12th century. It supported Confucianism theoretically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Naewon</strong></td>
<td>Flower garden in royal palace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>North Song</strong></td>
<td>A state in China from 960 to 1126.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Paekje</strong></td>
<td>A state in the southwest of the Korean Peninsula from 3rd century BC to 660.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pang-Ri system</strong></td>
<td>Urban system began during the Tang dynasty of China. The city was divided regularly in a chequered pattern with five main bu (districts), many pang in every bu and many ri in every pang, which were administrative units for running the city and controlling the citizens. Inside the walls of Changan, the capital of Tang, every pang and ri were surrounded by walls and could be entered only through gates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phalgwanhoe</strong></td>
<td>Buddhist ceremony held in royal palace along with playing, singing and dancing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phyochung</strong></td>
<td>Phyochung means singing the praises of loyalty and integrity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phyonjon</strong></td>
<td>Palace for king’s daily life.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Posthumous name</strong></td>
<td>Title given to a king posthumously.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ri dynasty</strong></td>
<td>A state from 1392-1905 after the ruin of Koryo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sejagung</strong></td>
<td>Palace where Crown Prince lived. It was also called Shuchunggung.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Silla</strong></td>
<td>A state in the south of the Korean Peninsula from 57 BC to 935.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sowon</strong></td>
<td>Private school run by knowledgeable scholars to provide Confucian education.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Taosim</strong></td>
<td>A religion and philosophy founded in China in the late 2nd century. Came to Korea in the 7th century and disappeared during the days of the Ri Dynasty (1392-1905).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Thaebong</strong></td>
<td>A small state in the central part of the Korean Peninsula from 901 to 918.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The principles of Yin-Yang 5 Natural Elements</strong></td>
<td>Philosophy on interaction of Yin and Yang, and the five Natural Elements – water, wood, metal, fire and earth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>T-shaped shrine</strong></td>
<td>Shrine with T-shaped ground plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Upbi (crying monument)</strong></td>
<td>Up means weeping. It is said that this monument has been wet all the time. People gave it this name to indicate that it was weeping for Jong Mong Ju’s death.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Yuan dynasty</strong></td>
<td>Dynasty established by the Mongols in the vast territory of Mongolia and China; from 1206 to 1388.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix 2: Chronological table of the history of Kaesong

**Table 25: Chronological table of the history of Kaesong**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Period</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Historical Events</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Koguryo</strong> (BC277 – AD668)</td>
<td>5th – 6th century</td>
<td>Kaesong was called Tongbihol and Pusogap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Later Silla (676 – 935)</td>
<td>757</td>
<td>Kaesong was renamed Kaesong County and Songak County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Period of Later Three States</strong> (892 – 936)</td>
<td>896</td>
<td>Wang Kon became the castellan after building the Palochem Wall in Kaesong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>898 – 905</td>
<td>Kaesong became the capital of the Thaebong State (901 – 918)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>905</td>
<td>Thaebong moved its capital to Cholwon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>918</td>
<td>Wang Kon founded Koryo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>919</td>
<td>Kaesong became the capital of Koryo. Palace Wall, Imperial Wall, palace buildings and 10 temples were built. Five bu (districts) were established in the capital.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>943</td>
<td>Construction of the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>960</td>
<td>Declaration of Kaesong as the Imperial Capital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>987</td>
<td>Establishment of Pang-Ri system (ancient town- dividing system) in Kaesong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>992</td>
<td>Foundation of Kukjagam, the highest educational institution in Koryo in the present Naesong-dong area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1009 – 1029</td>
<td>Construction of the 23km-long Outer Wall encompassing the whole city as advised by Kang Gam Chan, a famous general in Koryo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1011</td>
<td>Destruction of Manwoldae royal palace by the invasion of Kitan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1011 – 1014</td>
<td>Reconstruction of Manwoldae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>early 11th century</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>Consolidating of the Pang-ri system by establishing 35 bang and 344 ri in 5 bu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Period of King Munjong (1047 – 1083)</td>
<td>1109 – 1083</td>
<td>Construction of Taemyong Palace, the royal villa in the present place of Koryo Songgyungwan. Later the villa was turned into a lodging house called Sunchon House.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1089</td>
<td>Kukjagam was moved to Sunchon House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1126</td>
<td>Destruction of Manwoldae by the rebellion of Ri Ja Gyom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1132 – 1138</td>
<td>Reconstruction of Manwoldae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1171</td>
<td>Damage of Manwoldae by fire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1204</td>
<td>Extension of the market street from the present Namdae Gate to the Kwanghwa Gate, the east gate of Imperial Wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1223</td>
<td>Repair of the Outer Wall</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1232 – 1270</td>
<td>Move the capital to the Kanghwa Island due to the invasion of the Mongolians</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1304</td>
<td>Construction of Taesong Hall in Kukjagam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1308</td>
<td>Rename of Kukjagam into Songgyungwan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1349</td>
<td>Construction of Myong Tomb for the 29th King Chugmok of Koryo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1358</td>
<td>Repair of the Outer Wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1361</td>
<td>Destruction of Manwoldae by Hongtou’s invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1365 – 1372</td>
<td>Construction of the Mausoleum of King Kongmin, the 31st king of Koryo and the Kwangthongbojeson Temple</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Periods and Events

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Period</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ri dynasty (1392 ~ 1910)</strong></td>
<td>1367</td>
<td>Reconstruction of Songgyungwan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1378</td>
<td>Repair of the Outer Wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1391</td>
<td>Start of the construction of the Inner Wall initiated by Choe Yong, a famous general of Koryo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1392</td>
<td>Murder of Jong Mong Ju, a loyal subject of Koryo, on Sonjuk Bridge. Koryo was replaced with the Ri dynasty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1393</td>
<td>Completion of the Inner Wall. Construction of the Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1394</td>
<td>Ri dynasty moved its capital from Kaesong to Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1395</td>
<td>Ri dynasty downgraded Kaesong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1399</td>
<td>Transfer of the capital to Kaesong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1405</td>
<td>Transfer of the capital back to Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1438</td>
<td>Revise the grade of Kaesong into prefecture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1440</td>
<td>Dividing of Kaesong in a four bu - four pang system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1573</td>
<td>Converting of the house of Jong Mong Ju into sowon. It was bestowed the title, Sungyang Sowon, by the Ri dynasty in 1575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1592</td>
<td>Destruction of Songgyungwan by the Japanese invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ri dynasty (1392 ~ 1910)</strong></td>
<td>1602</td>
<td>Construction of the Monument to Jong Mong Ju near Sonjuk Bridge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1641</td>
<td>Construction of the Monument to Jong Mong Ju near Sonjuk Bridge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1660</td>
<td>Repair of the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1740</td>
<td>Construction of a Phyochung Monument near Sonjuk Bridge by the 21st King Yongjo of the Ri dynasty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1780</td>
<td>Construction of a shrine at the Mauasoleum of King Wang Kon. Setting up of railings on Sonjuk Bridge and a new bridge next to it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1872</td>
<td>Construction of a Phyochung Monument near Sonjuk Bridge by the 26th King Kojong of the Ri dynasty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1873</td>
<td>Repair of the Kaesong Walls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1899</td>
<td>Repair of the Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1906</td>
<td>Kaesong was downgraded into a county and with four sub-counties and 14 ri.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Period of Japanese colonial rule (1910 ~ 1945)</strong></td>
<td>1950</td>
<td>The gate pavilion of Kaesong Namdae Gate and the Kwandok Pavilion were destroyed by American bombing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Period of Japanese colonial rule (1910 ~ 1945)</strong></td>
<td>1952</td>
<td>Kaesong was placed directly under the central authority and Kaephung, Phanmun and Jangphung counties were annexed to it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1954</td>
<td>Restore the Kwandok Pavilion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1955</td>
<td>Restore the Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1988</td>
<td>Koryo Songgyungwan was turned into the Koryo Museum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1994</td>
<td>Reconstruction of the Mauasoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2003</td>
<td>Kaesong City belonged to North Hwanghae Province</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Letter of Authorization

1. I, Director General of NBCPC, the undersigned, hereby grant free of charge to UNESCO the non-exclusive right for the legal term of copyright to reproduce and use in accordance with the terms of paragraph 2 of the present authorization throughout the world the photograph(s) and described in paragraph 4.

2. I understand that the photograph(s) described in paragraph 4 of the present authorization will be used by UNESCO to disseminate information on the sites protected under the World Heritage Convention in the following ways:
   a) UNESCO publications;
   b) Co-editions with private publishing houses for World Heritage publications: a percentage of the profits will be given to the World Heritage Fund;
   c) Postcards – to be sold at the sites protected under the World Heritage Convention through national parks services or antiquities (profits, if any, will be divided between the services in question and the World Heritage Fund);
   d) Exhibition, etc.

3. I also understand that it shall be free to grant the same rights to any other eventual user but without any prejudice to the rights granted to UNESCO.

4. The list of photograph(s) for which the authorization is given is shown in 7(a).

5. All the photographs will be duly credited. The photographer’s moral rights will be respected. Please indicate the exact wording to be used for the photographic credit.

6. I hereby declare and certify that I am duly authorized to grant the rights mentioned in paragraph 1 of the present authorization.

7. I hereby undertake to indemnify UNESCO, and to hold it harmless of any responsibility, for any damages resulting from any violation of the certification mentioned under paragraph 6 of the present authorization.
8. Any differences or disputes which may arise from the exercise of the rights granted to UNESCO will be settled in a friendly way. Reference to courts or arbitration is excluded.

Ryong Ju
Director General
NBCPC, DPRK
December 19th, 2010
Appendix 4: Laws related to the protection of cultural heritage

I  THE LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA ON PROTECTION OF CULTURAL PROPERTY (24 March 1994)

II  THE LAND LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA (29 April 1977)

III  THE LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA ON ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION (9 April 1986)

IV  THE LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA ON CITY MANAGEMENT (29 January 1992)

V  THE FOREST LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA (11 December 1992)
I

THE LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA ON PROTECTION OF CULTURAL PROPERTY

(Extracts)

Adopted as the Decision No.46 of the Standing Committee of the Supreme People’s Assembly of the DPR Korea (March 24, 1994)

Revised by the Decree No.372 of the Standing Committee of the Supreme People’s Assembly of the DPR Korea (January 21, 1999)

Revised and complemented by the Decree No. 3155 of the Standing Committee of the Supreme People’s Assembly of the DPR of Korea (March 31, 2009)

Chapter 1. FUNDAMENTALS OF THE LAW ON PROTECTION OF CULTURAL PROPERTY

Article 1. (Mission of the Law on Protection of Cultural Property)

The Law of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea on Protection of Cultural Property contributes to establishment of strict system and order for protection and management of cultural property, to their preservation in original state, to their proper inheritance and development, and to enhancement of national pride and confidence among the people.

Article 2. (Description of cultural property)

Cultural property constitutes invaluable treasure of the country, which vividly demonstrates the time-honored history and brilliant cultural tradition of our people.

Cultural property includes such historical sites as sites of primitive age, fortresses, beacon fire sites, buildings and their ruins, tombs, pagodas, stone monuments, kiln sites, blacksmith, and such historical relics as working tools, daily necessities, weaponry, artifacts, old books and writings, human fossils and bones.

Article 3. (Ownership of cultural property)

Cultural property shall be owned only by the State. But, movables which have been inherited as the family property may be privately owned.

The State shall not recognize the transfer of ownership of cultural property which has illegally been exported and shall claim its restitution.
Article 4. (Fundamental principle of management of cultural property)

Thanks to the correct policy of protecting cultural property, numerous cultural relics have been discovered, collected and restored in the DPR of Korea.

The State shall consolidate the success which has already been achieved in the field of protection and management of cultural property and increase investment to it on a planned basis to work actively to discover the cultural property, legacy of the nation, and inherit them.

Article 5. (Principle of restoring, reconstructing, protecting and managing the cultural property in conformity to the historical facts and practical reality in development)

It is a consistent policy of the State to protect cultural property.

The State shall pay great attention to protection and management of cultural relics and see to it that they be restored, reconstructed, protected and taken care of in conformity with the historical facts and the requirement of the reality in development.

Article 6. (Principle of protecting and managing cultural relics by the whole nation and society)

Protection and management of cultural property is a nation-wide undertaking which involves the whole of society.

The State shall establish a unified guidance system for protection and management of cultural property and put in force the shared responsibility system for upkeep of cultural sites.

Article 7. (Principle of use of cultural property)

The State shall ensure an extensive use of cultural property to make scientific research into the nation’s history and culture, and intensify education of the people in patriotism.

Article 8. (Principle of scientific research for protection and management of cultural property)

The State shall intensify scientific research for protection and management of cultural property and encourage active introduction of advanced scientific and technological achievements to this field.

Article 9. (Exchange and cooperation of the excavation and collection of cultural relics)

The State shall promote exchange and cooperation with foreign countries and international organizations in the field of protection and management of cultural property.

Chapter 2. ARCHAEOLOGICAL EXCAVATION AND COLLECTION OF CULTURAL RELICS

Article 10. (Planned organization of the excavation and collection of cultural relics)

Archaeological excavation and collection of cultural relics is important in enriching the country’s
APPENDICES

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

Cultural treasury.

Cultural property preservation guidance agencies and other relevant bodies shall organize archaeological excavation and collection of cultural relics in a far-sighted planned manner.

Article 11. (Bodies authorized with excavation of cultural relics and its approval)

The excavation of cultural relics shall be undertaken only by the cultural property preservation agencies and other relevant specialized bodies. Nobody can without permission from the central property preservation guidance agency.

Article 12. (Procedures for the permission of the excavation of cultural relics)

Any body or bodies desiring to excavate cultural relics shall submit an application to the central cultural property guidance agency.

Article 13. (Method of excavation of cultural property)

Any body or bodies authorized to undertake excavation of cultural relics shall conduct the work in such a scientific and technical way as to avoid any physical damage on them, and rezone the site immediately after the excavation.

Article 14. (Result of excavation and hand-over of excavated relics)

Any body or bodies that made an excavation shall submit a report on the excavations performed to the central cultural property preservation guidance agency in time determined by it, and the archaeological finds excavated on the sites shall be handed over to relevant cultural property preservation agencies.

Article 15. (Information of discovery of cultural relics)

When an organ, enterprise, organization or individual citizen discovers a site or an object of cultural interest, it or he/she should inform the cultural property preservation guidance agencies or other relevant bodies of its discovery.

The cultural property preservation guidance agencies or other relevant bodies, when informed, shall immediately investigate and confirm the place in question and take necessary steps. Without taking due steps, any projects including construction of structures cannot be undertaken in and around the place.

Article 16. (Collection of cultural relics)

Historical relics shall be collected only by the cultural property preservation agencies.

The cultural property preservation agencies shall regularly organize collection of historical relics.

Special premium shall be granted for any historical relics that have been donated to the State,
according to their value.

Article 17. (Disposal of the cultural relics found out in the course of procurement)

Banks, procurement agencies and other relevant institutions shall hand over to cultural property preservation agencies the objects of historical interests which have been found out in the course of procurement.

Chapter 3. EVALUATION AND REGISTRATION OF CULTURAL PROPERTY

Article 18. (Obligatory evaluation and registration of cultural property)

Proper evaluation and registration of cultural property is an important requirement for its protection.

The cultural property preservation guidance agencies and other relevant bodies shall make substantiated evaluation and registration of cultural property.

Article 19. (Organization of thedeliberation and evaluation committee of cultural property)

The cultural property is deliberated and evaluated in the central cultural property preservation guidance agency.

A non-permanent State Historical Property Deliberation and Evaluation Committee is established in the central cultural property preservation guidance agency.

Article 20. (Application for appraisal of cultural property)

Any organ, enterprise, organization or individual citizen desiring to have a cultural property evaluated shall submit an application to central cultural property preservation agency. The application shall clarify the name of cultural property, its site, historical time, current state, preservation prospect and preservation site with photographs and a chart.

Article 21. (Method of deliberation and evaluation of cultural property)

The central cultural property preservation guidance agency, after having received the application, shall convene the State Historical Property Deliberation and Evaluation Committee and evaluate the historical time and value of preservation of the appropriate property properly on the principle of historicism.

Cultural property shall be classified into National Treasure, Semi-national Treasure and ordinary preservation cultural property, according to its historical significance as well as its formative and artistic value.
Article 22. (Registration of cultural property)

The cultural property preservation guidance agencies on approval of the Cabinet shall make a registration of the cultural property which has been evaluated to be of value to preserve. In this case they have to make a proper record of the registered number, name, date of registration, site, area of reserves and etc.

The cultural property determined to be of value of the National Treasure or Semi-national Treasure shall be registered by the central cultural property preservation guidance agency and others by the local cultural property preservation guidance agencies.

Article 23. (Record of change, restoration or repair of the cultural property)

An organ, enterprise, organization or citizen shall make a timely record of change, restoration or repair of the registered cultural property and report the results to the relevant agency with registration authority.

Article 24. (Transfer or renaming of the cultural property)

An organ, an enterprise, an organization or a citizen desiring to abandon, transfer or rename the registered cultural property must get a prior permission from the Cabinet or from the central cultural property preservation guidance agency.

Chapter 4. PRESERVATION AND MANAGEMENT OF CULTURAL PROPERTY

Article 25. (Scientific and technological preservation and management of cultural property)

Careful preservation and management of cultural property is a basic way of preventing their damage and maintaining them in their original state.

Cultural property preservation agencies, relevant organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens should preserve and take good care of the cultural property in a scientific and technological way to suit their specific features.

Article 26. (Those in charge of preservation and management of cultural property)

Cultural property shall be preserved and taken care of by the cultural property preservation agencies, as well as by the relevant organs, enterprise, organizations and citizen.

The cultural property situated in special zones shall be preserved and managed by the relevant cultural property preservation agency and the institution which has the zones under their jurisdiction.

Organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens must avoid doing any act of damaging cultural
property and its protective facilities.

Article 27. (Designation of reserves for historical sites)

The State shall designate reserves for historical sites with a view to preserving them.
The reserves have to be designated in a reasonable way so as to facilitate the preservation and management of the historical property and provide the working people with a satisfactory visit and rest.
The Cabinet shall be responsible for the designation of reserves for historical sites.

Article 28. (Removal of structures in the reserves of historical property)

Cultural property preservation guidance agencies, local government organs, relevant organs, enterprises and organizations shall remove in time the dwelling houses or structures liable to affect the preservation and management of historical property in the reserves.
In case the cultivated land comes in the boundary of reserves the relevant agricultural guidance organ should take measures for recovering substitute land and provide cultural property preservation guidance agency with an appropriate area of land.

Article 29. (Prohibition in the reserves of historical property)

Any following acts are prohibited within the reserves of historical property:
1. Act of tilling land or developing underground resources
2. Act of building dwelling houses or structures without permission
3. Act of dumping waste water or sewage
4. Act of digging or felling trees
5. Act of creating fire risks

Article 30. (Set-up of plaques and explanation boards)

Local power organs and cultural property preservation agencies shall set up plaques and explanatory boards of standard size on historical sites, fence them around with markers and keep their surroundings neat and clean.

Article 31. (Repair, restoration and sterilization of cultural relics)

Cultural property preservation agencies and relevant organs, enterprise, organizations shall repair, restore and sterilize the cultural relics in a planned way.
Repair, restoration and sterilization of the cultural property shall not be allowed without full scientific and technical preparation.
Article 32. (Maintenance of temperature and humidity and prevention of accidents)

Cultural property preservation agencies and relevant organs, enterprise and organizations shall maintain the temperature and humidity appropriate for preservation of cultural property and prevent fire, loss, breakage and other unexpected accidents.

Article 33. (Use of historical relics)

Historical relics may be used for establishment of museums and other purposes related to preservation of cultural property.

When an organ, an enterprise or an organization wants to use historical relics, it must get a permission of the central cultural property preservation guidance agency prior to doing so.

Article 34. (Obligation of the users of historical relics)

The organs, enterprise, organizations and citizens that use historical relics shall preserve them in an original state and take meticulous care of them.

The form of historical relics cannot be modified without permission.

Article 35. (Safe-keeping of historical relics and use of replicas)

Cultural property preservation agencies and other organs, enterprise, organizations concerned shall keep historical relics carefully in special places equipped with necessary facilities and make replicas of vulnerable historical relics of high value for their regular use. In this case approval shall be given by the central cultural property preservation guidance agency.

Article 36. (Photography of cultural property and visit to tomb murals)

The organs, enterprise, organizations and citizens desiring to take pictures of cultural property or visit the tombs with mural paintings must get a permission of the cultural property preservation guidance agencies.

Article 37. (Plan of construction project)

When an organ, an enterprise or an organization plans a construction project in the area which may affect the preservation of cultural property, they must get an agreement of the cultural property preservation guidance agency.

Article 38. (Prohibition of sale or trafficking of historical remains)

Historical remains shall not be put on sale or trafficked out of the country.

An institution which plans to ship historical property out of the country for the purpose of exhibition must get a permission of the Cabinet.
Article 39. (Permanent preservation of blueprints and/or photographs of cultural property)

Cultural property preservation agencies and other relevant bodies shall prepare documentation such as blueprints and/or photographs of the cultural property belonging to the category of National Treasure for their permanent preservation.

Chapter 5. RESTORATION OF CULTURAL PROPERTY

Article 40. (Rehabilitation and restoration of typical cultural property)

Restoration of cultural property is an important endeavor to reproduce the relics that have been damaged or disappeared.
Cultural property preservation guidance agencies and local power organs shall rehabilitate and restore the typical cultural monuments, which represent different times of history, are of educational value and illustrate the excellence of national culture.

Article 41. (Layout of historical ruins)

Cultural property preservation guidance agencies and other relevant bodies shall draw up the layouts of historical ruins to be restored taking into full account of both the historical facts and the specific features of the given period of history, on the basis of scientifically proved information.
The layouts of historical ruins which are of national importance shall be approved by the Cabinet.

Article 42. (Preparation of restoration blueprints of historical ruins)

Preparation of blueprints of historical ruins shall be undertaken by relevant designing institutions.
The institutions authorized with preparation of blueprints shall draw restoration blueprints of historical ruins on the basis of approved technical specifications.
Restoration blueprints of historical ruins shall be approved by the central cultural property preservation guidance agency.

Article 43. (Planning of restoration of historical ruins)

The State planning organ shall integrate the restoration of important historical ruins into the master plan for state construction.

Article 44. (Quality and building inspection)

Cultural property preservation guidance agencies, relevant builders, organs, enterprises and organizations shall ensure the quality of restoration of historical sites to meet the requirement of the approved blueprints.
Those projects on completion are subject to the building inspection of the state building inspection organ and central cultural property preservation guidance agency.

Article 45. (Moving of historical sites)

Historical sites shall not be moved to other places without permission.
The organs, enterprises or organizations which plan to move historical sites to other places because of inevitable reasons should get an agreement with the central cultural property preservation guidance agency and a permission of the Cabinet prior to taking any action.

Article 46. (Restoration of historical remains)

Non-existing historical remains may be restored to their original state referring to the scientifically proved data. The historical relics shall be restored to their original state only by those institutions which are duly authorized by the central cultural property preservation guidance agency.

Chapter 6. GUIDANCE AND CONTROL OF CULTURAL PROPERTY PROTECTION

Article 47. (Strengthening of guidance and control of cultural property)

It is a major guarantee for executing properly the policy of protection of cultural property to strengthen the control and guidance to it.
The state shall establish a system of unified guidance to protection of cultural property and strengthen control and guidance over it.

Article 48. (Unified guidance to protection of cultural property)

The central cultural property preservation guidance agency shall ensure unified guidance to protection of cultural property under the leadership of the Cabinet.
The central cultural property preservation guidance agency shall put under control and guide protection and management of nationwide cultural properties, on a normal basis.

Article 49. (Assignment of responsibility of the preservation and management of cultural property)

Cultural property preservation guidance agencies, local power organs and other relevant bodies shall assign responsibility of the preservation and management of cultural property to the local state organs and other interest groups in the areas under their jurisdiction, integrate cultural property protection plans into the local development plans and implement them without fail.

Article 50. (Construction of museums, plazas for historical education, folk parks and Folk villages)

The central cultural property preservation guidance agency and other relevant institutions may
open museums or plazas for historical education in the areas with cultural relics concentrated.
When necessary, they may also build in such areas folk parks or villages which preserve and
vividly demonstrate the traditional life style of our people.
Opening of such museums, plaza for historical education, folk parks and folk villages shall be
approved by the Cabinet.

Article 51. (Provision of conditions for protection of cultural property)
The State planning organ, financial institutions and banks, relevant agencies, enterprises and
organizations shall fully provide labor forces, equipment, materials and fund necessary for the
protection of cultural property.
The manpower and financial resources, equipment and materials allocated for protection of
cultural property shall not be used for other purposes.

Article 52. (Provision of conditions for scientific researches and introduction of research results)
The Cabinet and other relevant institutions shall establish solid scientific research bases for
protection of cultural property and provide favorable conditions for research work.
Scientific research institutions concerned and cultural property preservation agencies shall actively
introduce the successes and experiences gained in their research work into the cultural property
protection and management.

Article 53. (Education through cultural property)
Cultural property preservation agencies, local power organs, and other relevant institutions should
endeavor to promote, through the cultural property, education of people from all walks of life
including young students so that they love and take good care of it with a higher sense of national
pride and confidence on the basis of clear understanding of the time-honored history and
homogeneity of the nation as well as its brilliant cultural tradition.
The mass media and other relevant bodies shall widely introduce and propagate the country’s
cultural property through planned coverage of it.

Article 54. (Month of Love-Cultural Property)
The State shall institute April and November as Months of Love-Cultural Property.
Local power organs, institutions, enterprises, organizations and citizens should organize the work
of preservation and management of cultural property in these months.

Article 55. (Organizing and operation of committee for preservation of historical remains and relics)
The State shall establish the non-standing State Committee for Preservation of Historical Remains
and Relics and the similar committees in the provincial (city under direct jurisdiction), city (district)
and county people’s committees in order to implement the policy of protection of cultural property to the letter.

The State Committee for Preservation of Historical Remains and Relics and the similar committees of all echelons shall discuss the implementation of the State policy and law regarding the protection of cultural property and take appropriate measures.

Business arrangement of the State Committee for Preservation of Historical Remains and Relics is in the charge of the central cultural property preservation guidance agency and that of the similar committees of lower echelons the relevant cultural property preservation guidance agency.

Article 56. (Supervision and control over protection of cultural property)

Protection of cultural property shall be supervised and controlled by cultural property supervisory organs and other relevant agencies with supervision authority. The cultural property supervisory organs and other relevant agencies with supervision authority should supervise and control the protection and management of cultural property on a normal basis.

Article 57. (Restoration to original state or compensation)

Those who incurred damage or loss of cultural property shall be required to restore it, or to compensate for the damage or the loss.

Article 58. (Administrative responsibility)

The persons of organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens to blame shall be subject to appropriate punishment according to the extent in the following cases:

1. Having excavated the cultural property without permission,
2. Having disturbed the protection of cultural property by avoiding removing a dwelling house or structure in the reserves or arranging a project in an area that may badly affect the protection of cultural property without an agreement with the central property preservation guidance agency.
3. Having damaged or stole the cultural property and its protective facility,
4. Having engaged in trade or brokerage of cultural property,
5. Having exported cultural property to other countries without permission,
6. Having been keeping the historical relics found instead of presenting
7. Having conducted an act referred to the Article 29.

Article 59. (Penal responsibility)

In case that any act mentioned in the Article 58 come to an offense the responsible persons of institutions, enterprises and organizations and individual citizens shall be subject to penalty according to the appropriate provisions of the criminal law.
II

THE LAND LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA

(Extracts)

Adopted as the Ordinance No.9 of the Supreme People’s Assembly (April 29, 1977)

Revised by the Decree No.803-1 of the Standing Committee of the SPA (June 16, 1999)

Chapter 1. THE LAND OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA IS A PRECIOUS GAIN OF THE REVOLUTION

…

Article 5. The State shall organize and carry out on a long-term basis the work of land conservation, land development and other projects for transforming the land and harnessing nature, according to the master plan for land development.

…

Article 7. The State shall classify the land according to its uses as agricultural land, inhabited land, woodland, industrial land, aquatic land and special land and manage them accordingly. Supervision and control of the administration and exploitation of land shall be exercised on a coordinated basis by the land administration offices under the guidance of the Cabinet and local government organs.

…

Chapter 2. LAND OWNERSHIP

…

Article 9. In the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea the land belongs to the State and to cooperative organizations. All land in the country is the common property of the people, and cannot be sold, bought or appropriated.

Chapter 3. THE MASTER PLAN FOR LAND DEVELOPMENT

…
Article 14. The master plan for land development is a coordinated, comprehensive, long-term program for properly developing, using, realigning and enhancing the beauty of the land in accordance with the aims of advancing the national economy and promoting the well-being of the people and for managing the economic life of the nation as a whole on a long-term basis and in a planned way.

The State shall draw up and carry out an ambitious and dynamic master plan for land development to make the country prosperous and to raise the standard of living of the people.

…

Article 17. The master plan for land development shall include:

…

7. The location and size of towns, villages, recreation centres and sanatoria, and measures to preserve beauty spots, natural monuments, cultural relics and remains;

…

Article 18. The master plan for nationwide land development and the master plan for land development for important areas shall be approved by the Supreme People’s Assembly or its Standing Committee and the master plan for regional land development by the provincial people’s assembly or the provincial people’s committee.

Chapter 4. LAND CONSERVATION

…

Article 25. The land administration offices shall set up conservation areas where necessary, in order to protect the rivers, lakes, reservoirs, dykes and other structures.

In these areas such acts as damaging river dykes and other structures or hindering their conservation and management are prohibited.

Article 26. It is prohibited to let untreated sewage flow into rivers, lakes and reservoirs, or to empty uncleansed toxic materials and dirt into them.

…

Article 32. The land administration offices shall mark out definite areas for the institutions, enterprises, schools and organizations to tend, in order to make the masses as a whole responsible for forestation and forest conservation work.

The institutions, enterprises, schools, organizations and citizens should take an active part in spring and autumn tree planting, conserve the forests properly and take good care of them.
and turn the mountains throughout the country into a paradise of greenery.

Chapter 5. LAND DEVELOPMENT

Article 57. All the roads in the country should be paved with cement, asphalt or stone to strengthen their surface; the technical condition of all roads should be constantly improved; and the safety and speed of the traffic and the modernity of the roads should be ensured.

Article 58. The road administration offices should put up good warning, indication, prohibition, mileage and other road signs, plant fruit trees and strong, fast-growing useful trees, lay out green verges and flower beds and set up resting places along the road sides, thereby keeping the roads in good order.

Article 60. The organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens are prohibited from taking any measure that is liable to hinder the protection and management of roads such as damaging the roads and their structures and installations or cutting down roadside trees without prior permission.

Chapter 6. LAND ADMINISTRATION

Article 64. Agricultural land comprises only arable land.

Agricultural land shall be managed by the agricultural guidance institutions and by the cooperative farms, organs, enterprises and organizations that use it.

Article 69. Inhabited land comprises built-up areas in cities, county towns and worker’s settlements and the adjacent land for public use, and built-up areas in the countryside.

Inhabited land shall be managed by the central city management office and the local administrative committees.

When an organ, an enterprise or an organization wishes to use inhabited land, it should obtain the permission from the relevant provincial people’s committee or from the Cabinet.

Article 71. The land administration offices should exercise supervision and control to prevent the organs, enterprise, organizations and citizens from felling trees without due attention or
burning down forests to create fields.

...  

Article 75. Special land comprises the land used for special purposes, such as old revolutionary battle sites, places associated with the revolutionary history of the country, places of cultural interest, reserves, and land for military use. Special land shall be administered by the central organ concerned, local administrative committees and the organs, enterprises and army units using it.

...  

Article 77. The land administration offices should assume coordinated control over all the land in the country and register, and exercise supervision and control so that the order established may be strictly maintained in the administration and use of land and so that land may be used in a far-sighted way according to the master plan for land development.
III

THE LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA
ON ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
(Extracts)

Adopted as the Ordinance No.5 of the Supreme People’s Assembly of the DPR Korea
(April 9, 1986)

Chapter 1. THE FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES OF ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

…

Chapter 2. THE PRESERVATION AND IMPROVEMENT OF THE NATURAL ENVIRONMENT

…

Article 11. (Establishment of natural reserves and special reserves)

Natural reserves and special reserves including those for natural beauty, fauna and flora and marine resources shall be established by the State in order to preserve the natural environment.

The Cabinet shall be responsible for this.

Article 12. (Measures for the environmental protection)

Land management organs and relevant organs shall systematically investigate and record changes in the natural environment, such as those evident among animals and plants, those in the configuration of the ground and those in climate in these reserves and special reserves and take any necessary steps for their protection and management.

In the natural reserves and special reserves no act that is harmful to the preservation of the natural environment in its original state and to its thorough protection and management shall be permitted.

Article 13. (Protection of sceneries)

Institutions, enterprises, organizations and citizens shall refrain from cutting down ornamental trees in and around cities and villages, along highways and railways and on the banks of lakes and rivers, and from damaging or destroying the scenery, such as beauty spots, pine groves on beaches, swimming beaches, peculiar rocks and cliffs, attractive and impressive physical features in mountainous areas and picturesque islands.
Article 14. (Protection of natural monuments and spots of scenic beauty and historical interests)

Institutions, enterprises, organizations and citizens shall refrain from developing coal and ore mines in scenic spots, tourist resorts and holiday centres and from constructing buildings and facilities which impede the protection of the environment, and shall preserve caves, waterfalls, the remains of old castles, natural monuments, as well as spots of scenic beauty and of historical interests, in their original state.

...

Chapter 3. THE PREVENTION OF ENVIRONMENTAL POLLUTION

Article 19. (Compliance with the permitted limits for environmental protection)

Preventing environmental pollution is a prerequisite for preventing damage to the environment. All institutions, enterprises and organizations shall comply strictly with the permitted limits for the protection of the environment, the pollutant emission standards and noise and vibration standards, set by the State.

These limits and standards shall be fixed by the Cabinet.

...

Article 36. (Measuring of the quantities and densities of harmful substances and intensity of noise and vibration)

Institutions, enterprises and organizations shall regularly measure quantities and densities of harmful substances emitted during production, as well as the intensity of noise and vibration, reduce them systematically and obtain approved limits from the environmental protection and control agencies concerned.

Harmful substances that exceed the permitted limit or are prohibited by the environmental protection and control agencies shall not be produced.

...

Chapter 4. THE GUIDANCE AND CONTROL OF ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

...

Article 47. (Compensation for the harm to health and property)

Institutions, enterprises, organizations and citizens that have harmed the people’s health and the property of the State, social cooperative organizations and citizens by destroying the environment shall compensate for the loss.

...
Article 50. (Administrative and penal responsibility)

In cases where institutions, enterprises, organizations violate this law to bring about grave consequences, their officials or the persons to blame shall be called to account administratively or penally.
IV
THE LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA
ON CITY MANAGEMENT

(Extracts)

Adopted as the Decision No. 14 at the Standing Committee of the Supreme People's Assembly
of the DPR Korea (February 29, 1992)
Revised and complemented several times later

Chapter 1. FUNDAMENTALS OF CITY MANAGEMENT

...  
Article 3. (Principle of protection and use of buildings and facilities)

The buildings and facilities of the DPRK are the precious assets built by the sweat of the brow of
its people.
The State shall ensure that their lifespan are increased and they are put into effective use through
improvement of their protection and management.

...

Chapter 2. MANAGEMENT OF BUILDINGS

...

Chapter 3. MANAGEMENT OF WATERWORKS AND HEATING FACILITIES

...

Chapter 4. IMPROVEMENT OF CITY ROADS AND RIVERS

...
Article 31. (Planned maintenance of city roads and rivers)

Maintenance of city roads and rivers is a key criterion to the cultural development of cities.
City management institutions, relevant institutions, enterprises and organizations shall take stock
of the maintenance of city roads and rivers, and improve them in a planned way.
Article 32. (Assignment of management of city roads and rivers)

City roads include motorways, lawns on the street, walkways, street lamps, bridges, tunnels, railroads, underpasses, zebra crossings, safety facilities for the protection of roads and signposts within the territory of a city, and city rivers include the rivers, streams, brooks and facilities for their protection within the territory of a city.

Management of city roads and rivers shall be undertaken by city management institutions. Management of exclusive roads and important rivers shall be undertaken by relevant institutions, enterprises and organizations.

…

Chapter 5. TREE AND FLOWER PLANTING

…

Article 40. (Management of parks and recreation grounds)

Local power organs and city management institutions shall lay out parks and recreation grounds of various sizes in different parts of cities and villages, maintain and operate them regularly.

…

Article 44. (Management of green areas)

Institutions, enterprises, organizations and citizens shall not pick flowers, cut trees or damage facilities in the green areas.

Cutting trees and digging turfs in the green area without approval of the relevant organs shall be prohibited.

Chapter 6. CITY BEAUTIFICATION

…

Article 51. (Prevention of hazardous gas and dust)

The enterprises that generate hazardous gas and dust in the processes of production shall equip themselves with gas and dust removing facilities and operate them regularly so as not to emit hazardous gas and dust into the residential areas.

Vehicles that emit exhaust gas above the limit shall not be operated, and tree leaves and other substances that emit smoke shall not be burned in the central part of city.
Chapter 7. GUIDANCE OF CITY MANAGEMENT

... 

Article 55. (Duty of central city management institution)

The guidance to city management shall be provided by the central city management institution under the unified guidance of the Cabinet. The central city management institution shall get acquainted with and give guidance to city management across the country on a normal basis.
THE FOREST LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA

(Extracts)

Adopted as the Ordinance No.9 of the Supreme People’s Assembly (December 11, 1992)

Revised and complemented several times later

Chapter 1. FUNDAMENTALS OF THE FOREST LAW

Article 1. (Mission of the Forest Law)

Forest law of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea contributes to the implementation of the forest policy of the State by establishing strict rules and order in forest creation and protection and the use of forest resources.

...

Article 5. (Principle forestation)

It is the consistent policy of the State to conduct forest planting and seeding on a mass scale. The State shall encourage all the people to actively participate in afforestation and all the relevant enterprises enhance their role in order to make the whole country a forest and garden.

...

Article 7. (Principle of using forest resources)

The State shall establish a correct order of using forest resources so as to use them in a synthetic and reasonable way.

...

Chapter 2. AFFORESTATION

Article 10. (Farsighted forestation)

Forestation is an important work for the prosperity of the country. Land management organs and other organs, enterprises and organizations in charge of forests or reforestation areas should endeavor to combine properly trees of good species such as Changsong larches and evergreens to steadily increase forest areas and improve forest scenery. They also
should execute reforestation in a farsighted way so as to improve the economic effectiveness of forests and increase forest accumulation per unit.

Chapter 3. FOREST PROTECTION

Article 21. (Permission for forest entrance or making of fire)

If organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens want to enter the forest areas or to set fire in and around the forest areas for the purpose of using the forestland or of exploiting forest resources, they or he/she should get permission from the land management organs.
Without permission, no one can carry things liable to catch fire or cause ignition in the forest areas.

Article 25. (Construction, lumbering and extraction in forest areas)

Organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens should refrain from erecting buildings, structures or highways in forest areas, or digging and cutting down trees or clearing forest, digging up stones or soil without due permission.

Article 26. (Projects for erosion control and torrential improvement)

Land management organs and other relevant organs, enterprises and organizations shall conduct projects for the erosion control and torrential improvement in a planned way and regularly repair the facilities concerned so as to protect forests from the natural disasters such as torrential rains or landslides.

Chapter 4. EXPLOITATION OF FOREST RESOURCES

Article 30. (Permission of use of forestland)

Permission of use of forestland shall be given by the Cabinet or by the land management organs concerned.
The Cabinet or the relevant land management organs should take into full account the purpose for and scale of use of forestlands in question before issuing permissions to it.

Chapter 5. GUIDANCE AND CONTROL ON THE FOREST ADMINISTRATION
Article 44. (Supervision and control on the forest management)

Supervision and control on forest administration are executed by the land management organs and other relevant supervisory and control agencies.

The land management organs and other relevant supervisory and control agencies should fulfill their duty so as to create forest on the principle of replacing one tree with ten, prevent damages from fire, blights and harmful insects, landslides, or reckless clearing for cultivation and deforestation and comply to the letter with the regulations in exploiting forest resources such as the use of forestland, lumbering and consumption of timbers

…

Article 47. (Administrative and penal responsibility)

In cases where grave consequences are resulted from violating the regulations for protection and exploitation of the forest resources such as failing to perform assigned tree-planting plans or to ensure the proper rate of rooting, or reckless deforestation, exploitation and export, or causing forest fire, the officials or persons of the institutions, enterprises and organizations to blame shall be called to administrative or penal punishment according to the damage(s) done.
Appendix 5: Structure of Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
Pyongyang, Democratic People’s Republic of Korea
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
MANAGEMENT PLAN of
THE HISTORIC MONUMENTS AND
SITES IN KAESONG

Democratic People's Republic of Korea
MANAGEMENT PLAN of
THE HISTORIC MONUMENTS AND SITES
IN KAESONG

Democratic People's Republic of Korea
Management Plan of the Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong is prepared by the Korean Cultural Preservation Centre under the guidance of the National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation (NBCPC), D.P.R. Korea on 19 December, 2010.

© Government of D.P.R. Korea 2011

First published by the Korean Cultural Preservation Centre under the NBCPC Pyongyang, D.P.R. Korea

®All rights reserved.

No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, transmitted in any form by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying or otherwise without the prior permission of the Government of D.P.R. Korea.
# CONTENTS

**PREFACE** ........................................................................................................................................ iv  
**ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS** .................................................................................................................... v  
**EXECUTIVE SUMMARY** ................................................................................................................... vii  

## 1 INTRODUCTION ................................................................................................................................. 3  
1.1 Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong ..................................................................................... 3  
1.2 Need for a Management Plan ........................................................................................................... 4  
1.3 Main Aims of the Plan ...................................................................................................................... 4  
1.4 Role and Position of the Plan .......................................................................................................... 5  
1.5 Structure of the Plan ....................................................................................................................... 5  

## 2 SITE DESCRIPTION ............................................................................................................................. 9  
2.1 Location and Boundaries.................................................................................................................. 9  
2.2 Natural and Geographical Setting .................................................................................................. 25  
2.3 Socioeconomic Setting .................................................................................................................... 25  
2.4 Description of the Site ................................................................................................................... 26  

## 3 SIGNIFICANCE OF THE SITE ............................................................................................................. 77  
3.1 Introduction...................................................................................................................................... 77  
3.2 Statement of Significance ............................................................................................................... 77  

## 4 MANAGEMENT CONTEXT ................................................................................................................ 83  
4.1 Ownership....................................................................................................................................... 83  
4.2 Protective designation and relevant laws ....................................................................................... 83  
4.3 Management system for the site ..................................................................................................... 85  

## 5 MANAGEMENT ISSUES AND OBJECTIVES ................................................................................. 95  
5.1 Introduction.................................................................................................................................... 95  
5.2 Site Conservation ............................................................................................................................ 96  
5.3 Management of the Buffer Zone ..................................................................................................... 97  
5.4 Research and Documentation ......................................................................................................... 100  
5.5 Site Presentation, Interpretation and Education ............................................................................. 102  
5.6 Access and Control ....................................................................................................................... 102  
5.7 Vision for the Future ....................................................................................................................... 103  
5.8 Overall Objectives........................................................................................................................ 104  

## 6 IMPLEMENTATION OF MANAGEMENT PLAN ............................................................................. 109  
6.1 Agencies for Implementing the Plan and their Roles ..................................................................... 109  
6.2 Funding......................................................................................................................................... 114  
6.3 Action Plan .................................................................................................................................... 114  
6.4 Monitoring & Review of the Plan .................................................................................................. 125  

## APPENDICES ........................................................................................................................................ 129  
Appendix 1: Laws related to the protection of cultural heritage ......................................................... 129  
Appendix 2: Government organs related to the management of the property ................................... 155  
Appendix 3: Structure of Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee ......................................... 156  
Appendix 4: Glossary ........................................................................................................................... 157  
Appendix 5: Chronological Table of the History of Kaesong ............................................................... 160  
Appendix 6: Bibliography ................................................................................................................... 162
The Management Plan of the Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong was ratified by the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea on 15 January 2011.

This Management Plan was developed in close co-operation with the organizations responsible for the day-to-day care of the sites, together with the local community and others that have a specific interest in it. The Plan aims to provide a public understanding of the sites and ensure that effective and sustainable management and conservation strategies are in place to safeguard their very special tangible and intangible qualities for future generations.

I am sure that this Management Plan will help to guide the future of the sites and balance the development of their potential with the effective conservation, and prove to be an invaluable management tool to all those involved in the ongoing conservation and presentation of this very special place.

In addition, the National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation (NBCPC), D.P.R. Korea, shall, in close co-operation with UNESCO, do all it can for the protection of The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong, which are not only invaluable national heritage, but also a treasure of humankind as a whole.

Director-General of the NBCPC, D.P.R. Korea
PREFACE

The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong designated for nomination to the World Heritage is representative cultural heritage created in the nearly 500-year-long history of the capital of Koryo and handed down to posterity. It is our responsibility to maintain or enhance its cultural significance for current and future generations.

This Management Plan (MP) was formulated in accordance with international conventions and recommendations such as the UNESCO Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage (World Heritage Convention) adopted in 1972, the Operational Guidelines for the implementation of the World Heritage Convention (Operational Guidelines), and the 1964 International Charter on the Convention and Restoration of Monuments and Sites (The Venice Charter).

The MP details its main aims and overall objectives on a long-term and short-term basis, focused on background and issues, and an action plan for achieving these and for monitoring and reviewing its implementation. The MP introduces the data basic for the management of the sites and the current state of their conservation, elaborates the main objectives and principles of the MP, and proposes work plans for the next five to ten years for its implementation.

The Academic Committee of the Korean Cultural Preservation Centre, authorized by NBCPC, prepared the MP, in close cooperation with the following organs:

NBCPC, the supreme guidance organ in conserving and managing the cultural heritage,

Cultural Preservation Department, Urban Management Bureau and Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation that work under the guidance of Kaesong City People’s Committee, North Hwanghae Province, the local authority,

Kaesong City Cooperative Farm Management Committee,

Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office, and

Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon.

The MP also referred to the comments made by the World Heritage experts after their visits to The Property in Kaesong in collaboration with UNESCO.

The MP will provide guidelines for ensuring effective and sustainable protection and management of The Property in Kaesong. It was ratified by the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea on 15 January 2011.

Questions or further information about the MP should be addressed to NBCPC.

Address of NBCPC: Oesong-dong, Yonggwang Street, Central District, Pyongyang City.
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I would like to give special thanks to the following people who participated in drawing up this Management Plan:

Assistance for writing and map making provided by:

Hong Song Chol  
Vice-Director, Department of Immoveble Heritage, National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation (NBCPC)

Dr. Ri Ki Ung  
Section Leader, Section of Academic Research, Korean Cultural Preservation Centre (KCPC)

Prof. Pyon Ryong Mun  
Architect, KCPC

Ri Jin Gyong  
Researcher, KCPC

Kim Jong Chol  
Researcher, KCPC

Choe Jun Gyong  
Researcher, KCPC

Paek Il U  
Cartographer, KCPC

Hwang Myong Ho  
Section Leader, Section of Old Architectural Design, KCPC

Tong Chong Ryong  
Designer, KCPC

Ri Sung Hwan  
Director, Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office

Kim Jin Sok  
Researcher, Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office

Kim Chol Man  
Director, Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon

Kim Kwang U  
Researcher, Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon

The Plan was translated by:

Pak Myong Il  
Translator, KCPC

Yun Song Il  
Translator, KCPC

Kim Ho  
Translator, KCPC
Technical assistance by:
Dr. Sharif Shams Imon  
Assistant Professor and Director, Heritage Studies Centre, Institute for Tourism Studies, Macao
Beatrice Kaldun  
Programme Specialist, UNESCO Beijing Office

Editorial assistance provided by:
Kim Myong Jo  
Editor, KCPC

Photographs assisted by:
Ri In Chol  
Director, KCPC
Jo Man Song  
Journalist, KCPC
Ryu Tae Hyon  
Journalist, KCPC

Financial assistance provided by:
National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation, D.P.R. Korea
United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO)
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The Property in Kaesong includes the royal palace, city walls, institutes of education and scientific research, traditional heritage and royal tombs, such as Manwoldae, Kaesong Chomsongdae, Kaesong Walls, Kaesong Namdae Gate, Koryo Songgyungwan, Sungyang Sowon, Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments, Mausoleum of King Wang Kon, Seven Tombs Cluster, Myongrung Cluster and Mausoleum of King Kongmin.

As the capital of Koryo, the first unified state on the Korean Peninsula, Kaesong achieved rapid growth as an urban area. It is well located for land and sea transport and for agricultural production, with large rivers and the West Sea nearby. These advantages of location not only promoted its status to a political, economic, military and cultural centre, but also made it rise in the world as a city of international trade. After the fall of Koryo and the rise of the Ri dynasty, Kaesong was reduced to the status of a commercial city second to Seoul, the capital of the Ri dynasty.

In its history of over 1000 years, Kaesong witnessed its ups and downs, such as foreign invasion and Japanese colonial rule.

The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong show the features of an ancient city most vividly among the capitals of the successive states which existed on the Korean Peninsula. They represent ideas, architectural skills, traditions and outstanding talents of the local people who created and took care of Kaesong’s unique historical landscape over a millennium, skilfully taking advantage of its topography.

The Property in Kaesong much impacted by the natural events such as earthquakes and landslides, and the human activity, now urgently demands care and protection. This is all the more so owing to the city’s development and the increasing pressure of tourism.

The Government of the DPRK has formulated this MP to improve the quality of management of the historical sites in Kaesong. The MP elucidates the legal provisions and management system for providing satisfactory protection and management for the historical sites in Kaesong. In addition, it puts forth in detail the objectives of protection and management, and ways for its improvement in the framework of a decade-long plan for the city’s development as well as the tasks of coping with the problems concerning the conservation and protection of historical sites and the historical landscape in Kaesong in the next five years.

The NBCPC monitors the progress of the implementation of these objectives in the MP and examines it every year. The whole MP will be reviewed every five years.
1.1 The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong
1.2 Need for a Management Plan
1.3 Main Aims of the Plan
1.4 Role and Status of the Plan
1.5 Structure of the Plan
1 INTRODUCTION

1.1 Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong

---

1. Kaesong has one thousand-year history as a city. For half of the period, it was the capital city of Koryo (918–1392). The cultural heritage sites remaining in Kaesong are living testimony to the long history of the city.

2. At the southern foot of Mt. Songak skirting the north-western part of the city is the site of Manwoldae, the royal palace of Koryo. The royal palace collapsed a long time ago and only its site remains, but the huge cornerstones and sizable granite terraces which would have supported the gigantic royal mansion testify to the great dignity and eminence of the Koryo kings. A little way off there is Kaesong Chomsongdae, a royal astronomical observatory.

3. In Kaesong, the walls are well preserved, showing the outline of the old capital wall and the old design of the city. The Outer Wall of 23 km encircled the old capital city, and inside it are the Palace Wall enclosing the royal palace, the Imperial Wall to defend the royal palace and government offices, and the Inner Wall.

4. At the heart of the walls still stands the Kaesong Namdae Gate, facing due south as it did in the past. During the Koryo period, this was a point of intersection of the main roads from east to west and from north to south. To the north stretches the main road to Manwoldae, the royal palace. The Korean-style old houses along the road give a glimpse of the then busy town.

5. A little way to the east from Kaesong Namdae Gate is Sungyang Sowon, a private Confucian educational institution, refashioned from the house of Jong Mong Ju, a high-ranking official and loyalist at the end of the Koryo period, and a little further east are Sonjuk Bridge and the Phyochung Monuments.

6. Going north from the bridge, Koryo Songgyungwan, the highest state-run institute of Confucian education and a leading one in the world, stands in a serene place northeast of the walls.

7. Viewing the city from the top of Mt. Janam northeast of the Namdae Gate reveals the historical landscape of the old city, still vivid with the lifestyle of Koryo.

8. The successive royal tombs of Koryo scattered in the western part beyond the walls and in
the areas neighbouring Kaesong add to the historical landscape of the 500-year-old city.

9. With the rich heritage created since the Koryo days and preserved to this day Kaesong takes pride in its long history and still preserves the landscape of the ancient city.

1.2 Need for a Management Plan

1. The MP plays an important role in the effective management of cultural heritage sites by providing the guidelines for purposeful and appropriate protection and management of the sites.

2. Heritage sites suffer damage with the passage of time by natural and human factors, such as natural disasters, development, war and tourism. Heritage can be kept in a good state of conservation when proper measures are taken in anticipation of such factors. It is necessary to work out a management plan to increase the efficiency of conservation and management of cultural heritage.

3. The location of the Property within contemporary urban and natural settings makes its management even more challenging. This challenge can only be met when local government organs, public organizations, enterprises, cooperative farms and schools, as well as bodies in charge of maintaining The Property are brought to participate in the overall management of The Property. Hence, the need for the MP to provide a plan for detailed management system and action plan so as to ensure close cooperation with and effective enlistment of those bodies in maintaining The Property.

1.3 Main Aims of the Plan

1. To ensure complete protection of the cultural significance of The Property.

2. To enhance mechanisms and regulations for the maintenance of The Property and the Buffer Zone.

3. To improve monitoring of the natural and man-made factors affecting The Property and take effective measures in advance of any event likely to affect it.

4. To develop The Property as a whole to allow better public understanding of the cultural significance of The Property.
5. To collaborate with UNESCO and other international organizations to improve the level of protection and management of the sites on the basis of up-to-date science and technology.

6. To strengthen presentation and promotion of the cultural significance of the sites.

### 1.4 Role and Position of the Plan

1. The MP has set short-term objectives to be implemented in the first five years of the MP, as opposed to the 10-year long-term objectives. The MP is intended to promote both conservation of The Property and to contribute to sustainable socio-economic development in Kaesong City and the region. It sets out a programme for keeping an appropriate balance between conservation and access, and between economic and other needs of the local community. It also presents the tasks of those in charge of site management and ways to enlist other institutions and individuals in the management of sites, and clearly identifies their obligations in the implementation of the MP. The MP has been drawn up in consultation with all those involved including the NBCPC, Kaesong City People’s Committee and Kaesong City Cooperative Farm Management Committee to ensure successful implementation.

2. On 15 January 2011, the MP was approved by the Government of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea. The Plan should be taken into consideration by the local government organs in framing and implementing their regional development plans, and their basic strategy and regional programmes of activities.

### 1.5 Structure of the Plan

1. The MP comprises six chapters.

2. Chapter 1 outlines the MP with a brief explanation of The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong, the necessity of the MP, its main objectives, its role and position and its framework.

3. Chapter 2 indicates the location and boundaries of The Property, its natural and geographical environment and its social and economic conditions, and explains the historical development of the sites and provides a description of them.

4. Chapter 3 states the significance of The Property.
5. Chapter 4 refers to the background of the MP relating to the ownership of the property, and its designation of protection, related laws and management system.

6. Chapter 5 analyses the issues arising in the management of The Property, and sets forth the general objectives to address them, divided into a long-term (2011-2020) MP and a short-term (2011-2015) MP.

7. Chapter 6 deals with the institutions participating in the implementation of the MP and their role. It also specifies the funds needed to implement the MP and their sources, and a detailed programme of activities. It puts forward the programmes and schedules for conservation of the sites, capacity building, and management of the buffer zone, research and recording essential to the management of The Property, management of the historical landscape of Kaesong, preservation, presentation, interpretation, education, access and control. Systemic monitoring and review of the progress have to be accompanied to increase the efficiency of the MP. The programme for this is also included in Chapter 6.
CHAPTER TWO: SITE DESCRIPTION

2.1 Location and Boundaries
2.2 Natural and Geographical Setting
2.3 Social and Economic Setting
2.4 Historical Development of the Site
2.5 Description of the Site
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
CHAPTER 2. SITE DESCRIPTION

2.1 Location and Boundaries

Kaesong City is located on the western coast of the middle part of the Korean Peninsula, about 160 km southeast of Pyongyang, the capital of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea (DPRK) (see Map 1).

Map 1: Location of Kaesong City – North Hwanghae Province
Table 1 shows the coordinates of The Property.

Table: Coordinates for The Property

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of Property</th>
<th>Region</th>
<th>Geographical Coordinates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>North Latitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manwoldae</td>
<td>Songak-dong</td>
<td>37° 59’ 01”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Chomsongdae</td>
<td>Songak-dong</td>
<td>37° 59’ 13”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Walls</td>
<td>Songak-dong, Sungjon-dong, Tokam-ri</td>
<td>South 37° 56’ 50”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>North 38° 00’ 10”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>East 37° 58’ 42”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>West 37° 58’ 04”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
<td>Pukan-dong</td>
<td>37° 58’ 09”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koryo Songgyungwan</td>
<td>Pangjik-dong</td>
<td>37° 59’ 19”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sungyang Sowon</td>
<td>Sonjuk-dong</td>
<td>37° 58’ 19”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sonjuk Bridge &amp; Phyochung Monuments</td>
<td>Sonjuk-dong</td>
<td>37° 58’ 26”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mausoleum of King Kon</td>
<td>Haeson-ri</td>
<td>37° 58’ 54”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seven Tombs Cluster</td>
<td>Haeson-ri</td>
<td>East 37° 59’ 13”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>West 37° 59’ 18”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myongrung Cluster</td>
<td>Haeson-ri</td>
<td>37° 58’ 45”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>Haeson-ri</td>
<td>37° 58’ 47”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.1.1 Location of The Property and the boundary of Core Areas

The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong are located in and around the built-up area of Kaesong and extend into the mountainous area to the west of the town (See Map 2).

2.1.1.1 Manwoldae & Kaesong Chomsongdae

Manwoldae and Kaesong Chomsongdae are placed on a wide tableland 500 m above sea level at the southern foot of M t. Songak in the north of Kaesong City. M ts. Janam, Jine and Jujak Hill in the east, west and south of M anwoldae surround M anwoldae as if guarding the site of the royal palace. The Kwangmyong Stream originates on M t. Songak and flows from northwest to southeast.

The core area of M anwoldae and Kaesong Chomsongdae is bordered in the south and west by a road along the Kwangmyong Stream flowing from SSangphokdong Valley, in the north by a
road running from east to west along the road behind Manwoldae, and in the east by a stream flowing from the northeastern part of Mt. Songak (See Map 3).

2.1.1.2 Kaesong Walls

The Kaesong Walls extend to Mt. Songak to the north, Mt. Ryongsu to the south, Mt. Jine to the west and Mt. Puhung to the east, linking hills in the outskirts of the city. To the north stands Mt. Songak, to the west lies Haeson-ri and to the south a vast field. To the east lies an open area and far away Panmunjom.

The core area has been defined within a 5 m range on both sides of the well-preserved walls (See Map 4).

2.1.1.3 Kaesong Namdae Gate

The Kaesong Namdae Gate stands at the junction of main roads stretching in all directions in the downtown area of the city. To the east is the Thongil House, and to the south, west and north shops and living quarters.

The boundary of its core area is defined along the ring road around it (See Map 5).

2.1.1.4 Koryo Songgyungwan

Koryo Songgyungwan is located at a place about 2.6 km northeast of the Kaesong Namdae Gate. Its eastern, western and northern sides are enclosed by low hills. Only its south faces open land. On low hills east and north are the Martyrs Cemeteries of the Korean People’s Army, while west at the foot of a low mountain is an open-air exhibition space which displays the stone structures of the Koryo period; 5-storied pagoda of Puril Temple, 7-storied pagoda of Hyonhwa Temple, Pagoda of Hungguk Temple, Monument to Hyonhwa Temple, stone lantern of Kaeguk Temple and so on. In the south are the Koryo Souvenir Shop, a stamp shop and a parking lot.

Its core area is bordered by a parking lot at its entrance in the south, a road to Ryongthong Valley in the east, a road running by the Martyrs Cemetery in the north, and by a ridge of the mountain in the west where an open-air exhibition space of the Koryo Museum is situated (See Map 6).
2.1.5 Sungyang Sowon

Sungyang Sowon is located 0.5 km away east of the Kaesong Namdae Gate. To the north stands Mt. Janam and to the east a low hill. In the south it is joined by a residential quarter and the Kaesong Cultural House and in front a trunk road stretches from east to west.

The core area of Sungyang Sowon is bordered by a mountaineering path on Mt. Janam in the north and west, and the back wall of the Hall of the Kaesong Artistic Squad that includes the residential area near the southern wall of Sungyang Sowon and the ridges of Mt. Janam in the south and east, respectively (See Map 7).

2.1.6 Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments

Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments are located at a place about 1 km north of the Kaesong Namdae Gate. In the east is a stream from Pidulgi Hill, and across it a road to Koryo Songgyungwan stretches to the north. At the northern end of the park is Janamsan Hotel and 30 m west stands the Pavilion of Phyochung Monuments. Behind the pavilion is the Kaesong Fine Art Studio. In the south there is a restaurant and 100 m away a trunk road runs from east to west.

The core area is bordered in the west by the front fence of the Kaesong Fine Art Studio, in the north by a road to Mt. Janam and the fence of Janamsan Hotel, in the east by the bank of a brook flowing from the Pidulgi Hill, and in the south by the fence behind the restaurant including a small park in front of it (See Map 8).

2.1.7 Mausoleum of King Wang Kon, Seven Tombs Cluster and Myongrung Cluster

The Mausoleum of King Wang Kon is located 4.5 km west of the Kaesong Namdae Gate, the centre of Kaesong City. The Mausoleum of King Wang Kon is placed 400 m west of this village. To the north is the low hill of Mt. Mansu stretching southwest. Eastward is the Haesong-ri seat village, and westward a low hill thick with pear trees. In the south are a parking lot and a park for visitors and far away fields and mountains.

The Seven Tombs Cluster is 500 m north of the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon.

The Myongrung Cluster is situated on the mid-slope of a hillock about 1 km south of the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon. To the north there is a road from the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon to the Mausoleum of King Kongmin, and Mt. Mansu is to the west Haean-dong village.
through the ridge and a valley and to the south M yongrung-dong village.

The Mausoleum of King Wang Kon, Seven Tombs Cluster and M yongrung Cluster are located in a core area. They are bordered by the valleys and ridge of M t. Mansu in the north and west, and a road running from M yongrung-dong to Haeson-ri in the south and east (See Map 9).

2.1.1.8 Mausoleum of King Kongmin

The Mausoleum of King Kongmin is about 3 km west of the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon. It is surrounded by low hills in the east, west and north and steep A cha Peak soars 1 km away south of it.

The core area of the Mausoleum of King Kongmin is bordered by a narrow road on a mountain ridge in the north and west, the A cha Peak in the south and a stream flowing down from the north of the mausoleum in the east (See Map 10).

2.1.2 Boundary of the Buffer Zone

The historical property is located in one buffer zone, to the east are the northern Mt. Songak, western Mt. Jine, eastern Mt. Puhung and Tokam Peak and southern Mt. Ryongsu that surround the downtown area, and to the west are Mt. Mansu, Ripam village, Sinjong-dong, M yongrung-dong and Tumun-dong (See the Map 11). This buffer zone fully guarantees protection and management of all The Property that is registered for national-level conservation.
### 2.1.3 Area of Core and Buffer Zones

**Table 2: Area of Core and Buffer Zone of the Property**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of Property</th>
<th>Area of core zone (ha)</th>
<th>Area of buffer zone (ha)</th>
<th>Total area (ha)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Individual area of core zone (ha)</td>
<td>Total area (ha)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manwoldae</td>
<td>43.5</td>
<td>494.2</td>
<td>5222.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Chomsongdae</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Walls</td>
<td>175.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koryo Songgyungwan</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sungyang Sowon</td>
<td>2.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seven Tombs Cluster</td>
<td>214.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myongrung Cluster</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>51.6</td>
<td></td>
<td>5716.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER TWO

MANAGEMENT PLAN

Map 3: Core Zone of Manwoldae

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
Map 6: Core Zone of Koryo Songgyungwan

Keymap

Legend

Scale

0 20 50 100 m

Core zone
Buffer zone
Building
Main road
Secondary road
River/stream
Pond

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
CHAPTER TWO

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

Map 7: Core Zone of Sungyang Sowon
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

Map 8: Core Zone of Sonjuk Bridge & Phyochung Monuments

Keymap

Legend

Scale

0 30 60 90 120 150
0 30 60 90 120 150

Core zone
Buffer zone
Building
Main road
Secondary road
River/stream
Map 9: Core Zone of Mausoleum of King Wang Kon, Seven Tombs Cluster and Myongrung Cluster
Map 10: Core Zone of Mausoleum of King Kongmin

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
Map 11: Core & Buffer Zone of The Property
2.2 Natural and Geographical Setting

1. Kaesong is located in the lower reaches of the Ryesong, Rimjin and Han Rivers flowing to the middle coast of the West Sea of Korea.

2. The urban area is surrounded by Mt. Songak on the north, Mt. Ryongsu on the south, Mt. Puhung on the east and Mt. Jine on the west, so it forms a large basin. Kaesong is composed mainly of low mountains and peneplain. Most of its land is peneplain within 100 m above sea level, except the northeastern mountainous area stretching to the range of Mt. Chonma, the terminal part of the range of the Ahobi Mountains.

3. The area where royal tombs are clustered, is a hilly area, higher in the northeast and gradually lowering to the southwest. To the south and west lies a fertile alluvial field and to the east low mountains below 400 m above sea level.

4. The climate in Kaesong is damp since it is a coastal area. Its annual average temperature is 10.2° C, -5.9° C in January on average, and 24.7° C in August on average, average wind speed 2.5 m/s, 3.6 m/s at the maximum and the annual precipitation 1290 mm. It has a continental climate with a wide margin between summer and winter, but rather milder than other regions on the same latitude.

5. Forest occupies 64% of Kaesong; almost all are pine and oak trees in the southern broad-leaved zone in the temperate regions with some chestnut, jujube and bamboo trees. The soil is mainly reddish-brown, but paddy and alluvial soils in the lower land and riverside.

2.3 Socioeconomic Setting

1. In the past, Kaesong was a commercial city with cottage industry related to agriculture and with backward light industry like Songdo textile production. However, in 1953 the economy rapidly began to develop, turning the city into an industrial city with textile, garment, machine-building, insam (ginseng) liquor, insam-processing, ceramics, building materials and plastic goods factories. First place in industrial production is taken by the fibre industry which produces cotton, chequer and various other quality textiles, and insam-processing and building-materials industries using ginseng, granite, slate and weathered gneiss are also of great significance. In particular, straw goods with sedge as raw material and beautiful handicraft are local specialities, and Kaesong Insam has been known as “Koryo Insam” since ancient times.
2. Major crops in Kaesong are rice, wheat, barley and maize. Major fruit are persimmon, pear and peach.

3. Since a number of medium/small-scale factories were built in the Panmunjom area according to measures taken to establish the Kaesong Industrial Zone by the State, the economy has experienced rapid growth. However, this does not affect the sites, because the factories are situated quite a distance away.

4. Though there are dwellings and some factories within the buffer zone of the urban area, they are strictly restricted by clear boundaries of the site area. There are no risks of waste from factories and air pollution.

2.4 Description of the Site

2.4.1 Introduction

1. Kaesong was the capital of the first state in Korean Peninsula for about 500 years. Kaesong had excellent natural and geographical conditions favourable to a capital. Kaesong lies in a basin, surrounded by mountains on four sides, with rivers flowing to the east, west and south of the city. The West Sea of Korea (also known as the Yellow Sea, the northern part of the East China Sea) lies to its southwest. River basins and the coastal area cover wide and fertile alluvial plain.

2. Kaesong was part of Paekje\(^1\) until the 4\(^{th}\) century, after which it was ruled by Koguryo\(^2\), and from the late 7\(^{th}\) century onward it became part of Silla\(^3\). Kaesong was a small local village before the 9\(^{th}\) century. As Wang Kon founded a new state (Koryo) in 918 and moved the capital to Kaesong, it began to develop in a fast speed. Soon Koryo merged Silla and Hubaekje\(^4\) and eventually became the first unified state in the history of the Korean Peninsula and Kaesong became the most powerful political hub on the Korean Peninsula.

3. Outer Wall was built on surrounding mountains and flatland of the capital by connecting Mts. Songak, Jine, Puhung, Ryongsu and Tokam Peak in 1009-1029, which enclosed the entire Kaesong. As it was thought that the Outer Wall was too large to defend Kaesong from the frequent foreign invasions, the Inner Wall was built in 1393 to surround main area.

---

\(^1\) A state in the southwest of the Korean Peninsula from the 3\(^{rd}\) century BC to 660 AD
\(^2\) A state in the north of the Korean Peninsula and northeast China from 277 BC to 668 AD
\(^3\) A state in the south of the Korean Peninsula from 57 BC to 935 AD
\(^4\) A state that occupied the same part of the southwest of the Korean Peninsula between 900 and 936
of the capital.

4. Kaesong was the centre of Buddhism in Koryo. Over 70 temples were built in various parts of the city, and there were so many pagodas that they looked like a forest. Some temples in Kaesong of thousands of Kans\(^5\) were bigger than the royal palace itself.

5. Koryo had developed handicraft and commerce, and its capital, Kaesong, was one of the busiest trade centres in the Far East. Celadon, silks, paper, folding fans and ginseng of Koryo were traded in Kaesong and exported to China, Japan and as far as the Middle East, gaining fame for their quality. In those days Pyokrando in the lower reaches of the Ryesong River was an international trading port. According to Koryosa and other historical records, the Pyokrando Port, which was near Koryo’s capital, was always full of foreign merchant vessels.

6. “Korea”, in international nomenclature, originated from the name “Koryo”. Today Korea has become the only name representing the entire Korean nation and its history.

7. The cultural development in the Koryo Period is, as a whole, featured with the first unified development in the history of the region. Koryo period constituted an important stage in achieving a cultural identity that is unique to the Korean nation. Kaesong, as the capital of Koryo, was the centre for assimilation of the cultures that preceded Koryo.

8. When the Ri dynasty (1392–1905) was founded after the downfall of Koryo in 1392, Kaesong was reduced to a local city. However, Kaesong continued to maintain its importance as a main commercial city. Ri dynasty gave a great importance to Kaesong which was a north entry of its capital. Kaesong still maintained its great position in science and culture as well as in politics, economy and military affairs.

9. During Japanese colonial rule (1905–1945), the administrative system and urban structure of Kaesong underwent a change. After the World War II, Kaesong was occupied by the US army. After the Korean War (1950–1953), Kaesong became part of the territory of the DPR Korea and many local factories, educational institutions, modern apartments and streets such as Thongil Street were built in Kaesong. Since 2003 it has been part of North Hwanghae Province.

\(^5\) A Kan corresponds to a bay meaning the space between two columns. For example, the total number of Kans of a house with 3 bays on the front and 2 bays on the side is 6 kans (3 \(\times\) 2 = 6).
2.4.2 Manwoldae and Kaesong Chomsongdae

2.4.2.1 Manwoldae (Site of the Royal Palace of Koryo)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location:</th>
<th>Songak-dong, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Construction year:</td>
<td>919, expanded in the early 11th century, and reconstructed from 1132 to 1138 and from the end of the 12th century to the early 13th century, respectively.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordinates:</td>
<td>37° 59’ 01” North, 126° 32’ 27” East</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Manwoldae⁶ is the site of the royal palace of Koryo that existed between AD 919 and 1361. It is situated at the western foot of Mt. Songak northwest of Kaesong.

No records remain of how the royal palace was built. But in view of the fact that the names and locations of the palace buildings recorded in the travelogue Sonhwabongsa-Koryodogyong, written by So Gung, a member of a delegation which had been to Koryo from North Song⁷, in China in the 12th century, largely coincide with the present layout of the palace, one can guess that the construction of a palace of the present size had been finished before the 12th century.

Figure 1: General view of Manwoldae against Mt. Songak

---

⁶ The word Manwoldae originated during the Ri dynasty, and later the word denoted the site of the royal palace.
⁷ A state in China from 960 to 1126
The total area of the site is 390,000 m². In front of the royal palace were gates in the order of Changhap, Sinbong and Sungphyong Gates. The halls were divided into central, western and eastern groups of buildings respectively.

Central group of buildings

This group consists of three large halls and subsidiary structures. They were built on an elevation, in other words, they were built on a high natural terrain; this means the site was not levelled when the royal palace was built. Therefore, the site of the group is elevated compared to those of the other groups. In the halls of this group, major national functions, morning gatherings and receptions of foreign guests were held and major national events discussed, such as war.

Nearly the whole appearance of the site of the group has already been revealed through unearthing.

In the forefront of the group is a large terrace 60 m long and 7.8 m high. At the terrace are four Great Staircases, each with 33 stairs. The number of stairs symbolizes that the royal palace stands above the Trayastriimsa Heaven (Thirty-three Heaven) mentioned in Buddhism. The site of Hoegyong Hall, the major hall, is on these staircases. The hall, measuring nine bays (39.16 m) at the front by four bays (16.73 m) at the side, was the largest structure with side buildings attached in Maewoldae.

In front of the hall was a yard where state officials gathered every morning, and corridors surrounded the hall and the yard.

At the back of the Hoegyong Hall is the site of the Janghwa Hall. Comprised of both a front and a back structure, which were connected, the hall was surrounded by corridors. Royal treasures were kept in the eastern and western corridors. At the back of the site of the Janghwa Hall, there were other structures, including the Wondok Hall, but only the site of the Wondok Hall still remains, while the sites to its north were destroyed.

Western group of buildings

On a lower site west of the site of the central group of buildings, there is the site of the western group of buildings. There were twenty palace buildings. The Kondok Hall was next to the Hoegyong Hall in importance. The successive kings of Koryo administered the country usually

---

Heaven of the Thirty-three Gods, second of the six heavens of the world of desire in Buddhism.
in this hall, except for the holding of major functions and ceremonies and the conducting of national affairs. Other halls here included Sonjong (pyonjon⁹), Junggwang (pyonjon), Yonyong (pyonjon), Jangryong (pyonjon), Jasu (pyonjon), Manryong (chimjon¹⁰) and others as well as shrines and temples.

Most of the structures are yet to be unearthed; only some have been discovered so far, and some are thought to be shrines and temples. The unearthed sites are now in the process of being confirmed.

**Eastern group of buildings**

It is situated on a lower site east of the site of the central group of buildings. According to Sonhwabongsa-Koryodogyong, there were the Suchun Palace¹¹ with Chundok, Wonin and Yukdok Gates, Suchun and Konmyong Halls and several other structures. In addition to these, there were several gardens, ponds, pavilions and temples.

A detailed archaeological survey of the eastern group of buildings is yet to be carried out.

Royal palace of Koryo was burned during the 10-day occupation of the capital in January 1011 by the second invasion of Khitan. It was also burnt due to the rebellion led by Ri Ja Gyom, the then minister, in 1126. A large part of it was damaged in the days when the capital was moved to Kanghwa Island between 1232 and 1270 during a Mongol invasion. Each time, it was rebuilt, but after it was completely burned down during an invasion by Hongtou, it was not rebuilt owing to the financial problems. In those days the Koryo court was administering the state in a royal villa, but it ceased its existence in 1392 with the founding of the Ri dynasty.

In the whole period of the Ri dynasty, Manwoldae was not taken care of. After the country’s liberation in 1945, US troops attempted to bulldoze the back site of the central group of buildings to build military barracks there, but had to suspend the project owing to the local people’s protest. During the Korean War (1950–1953), the stone works in the front part of the central group of buildings were damaged by bombing. After the war, the local people and the Korean People’s Army soldiers reconstructed the damaged part over two years, between 1953 and 1954. Afterwards, Manwoldae was registered as a National Treasure Site.

In 1973–1974, the Archaeological Institute of the Academy of Social Sciences conducted excavation on some building sites (the names of the buildings are not confirmed) in the central

---

⁹ Palace for king’s daily life  
¹⁰ Palace for king’s bedroom  
¹¹ Palace where Crown Prince lived
and western groups of buildings. Small-scale excavation projects were undertaken later. A similar project was undertaken over three years, from 2007 to 2009, and several building sites were revealed.
Figure 2: Sites of palace buildings in central group of buildings, Manwoldae

Site of Janghwa Hall, Manwoldae

Site of Hoegyong Hall, Manwoldae

1. Foundation stone
2. Terrace
3. Stairs
Figure 3: Sites of gates in Manwoldae

1. Foundation stone
2. Terrace
3. Stairs

Site of the Gate to Hoegyong Hall, Manwoldae

Site of Changhap Gate, Manwoldae

Site of Sinborg Gate, Manwoldae
2.4.2.2 Kaesong Chomsongdae

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location:</th>
<th>Songak-dong, Kaesong, North Hwanghae Province</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Construction year:</td>
<td>Early days of Koryo (correct year yet to be confirmed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordinates:</td>
<td>37° 59' 13&quot; North, 126° 32' 27&quot; East</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Kaesong Chomsongdae was an observatory west of Manwoldae, where astronomical and meteorological surveys were conducted. The structure was destroyed after the ruin of Koryo, and only its platform remains.

Figure 4: Remains of Kaesong Chomsongdae

Koryo attached importance to astronomical surveys not only for agriculture and other economic activities but also, from a superstitious point of view that whether governance was good or not was reflected in the change of celestial bodies. Therefore, apparatuses for astronomical surveys and the body that managed them were situated near the royal palace to carry out regular astronomical surveys.

Kaesong Chomsongdae, together with its counterpart in Kyongju\(^\text{12}\), is regarded as the oldest

\(^{12}\) Kyongju was the capital of Silla (57 BC – 935 AD), and Chomsongdae was built there in the first half of the 7th century BC.
structure for astronomical surveys in the world.

Recently, materials guessed to be columns have been found near Kaesong Chomsongdae. Specialists assume, on the basis of the survey, that there had been a two-storied structure on the platform. Now Kaesong Chomsongdae is registered as a National Treasure Site.
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
2.4.3 Kaesong Walls

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location:</th>
<th>Kaesong, North Hwanghae Province</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Construction Year:</td>
<td>Imperial and Palace walls in 919, Outer Wall in 1009-1029, Inner Wall 1391-1393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordinates:</td>
<td>$37^\circ 56' 50''$, $38^\circ 00' 10''$, $37^\circ 58' 42''$ and $37^\circ 58' 04''$ North, $126^\circ 32' 27''$, $126^\circ 33' 00''$, $126^\circ 35' 31''$ and $126^\circ 31' 28''$ East</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Outer Wall**

This wall was constructed in 1009–1029, during the reign of Hyonjong, the 8th king of Koryo, at the suggestion of Kang Gam Chan, a famous general of Koryo.

It was a plain and mountainous wall built on surrounding mountains and flatland of the capital by connecting Mts. Songak, Jine, Puhung, Ryongsu and Tokam Peak. Its northern, eastern, western and northwestern parts are on mountains, while its southeastern part is on flatland. Some lengths were made of stones, and others of earth. According to *Koryosa*, it was nearly 23km long and had 25 gates.

The Outer Wall began to be built from 1009, and the project advanced rapidly after the 10-day occupation of Kaesong by Khitan in January 1011 during Khitan’s second invasion of Koryo. The project was completed in August 1029, 21 years after its start. The wall was repaired in July 1050 and again in 1358. As it became difficult to defend the capital from the frequent foreign invasions, especially in times of weakening national strength, by relying on the whole of the Outer Wall, an Inner Wall incorporating some parts of the Outer Wall was built in the later days of Koryo.

The wall has been preserved in relatively good shape. No gate remains intact; lower parts of the gates and gateways have only survived for three gates—Pukchang, Pukso and Nulli. The rest has been lost.
Inner Wall

Inner Wall was built to surround some area inside the Outer Wall, including the Palace and the Imperial Walls. Its construction started in 1391 and was completed in 1393, the year after the founding of the Ri dynasty. Built with stones, it was 11.2km long and had five gates—Pukso\(^{13}\), Jinon, Tongdae, Namdae and Soso.

The sections of the Outer Wall, except those that were part of the Inner Wall, were abandoned over time. The Inner Wall was repaired several times in the whole period of the Ri dynasty, in 1873 for the last time.

During the Japanese colonial rule, the Naedongdae and Soso Gates and many sections of the Inner Wall were demolished in accordance with the urban development plan.

From 1956, the Kaesong Walls began to be managed by the Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office. In 1994, some sections near the pass at Tocha-ri were repaired, and the shrubs growing on the walls were removed in 1995. The earthen walls were reinforced in 2007-2008.

The eastern and southern sections have been lost, and some sections in the northern and southwestern parts of the wall still remain. The gates have been lost, except the Namdae Gate.

\(^{13}\) Also the Pukso Gate of the Outer Wall, in other words, it served as a gate for the Inner Wall, as well as for the Outer Wall.
2.4.4 Kaesong Namdae Gate

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location:</th>
<th>Pukan-dong, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Construction year:</td>
<td>1391~1393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordinates:</td>
<td>37° 58’ 09” North, 126° 33’ 29” East</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Kaesong Namdae Gate was a southern gate of the Inner Wall of Kaesong Walls. It is now situated at an intersection in the central part of Kaesong. Built in 1393 during the construction of the Inner Wall was being built, it still preserves its original appearance.

**Figure 7: Kaesong Namdae Gate**

Its location was the central part of the city during the Koryo dynasty. Two trunk roads running from east to west and from south to north intersected just in front of the gate. The road running from south to north was linked to the Kwanghwa Gate, the main gate of the Imperial Wall.

The stone platform of the Kaesong Namdae Gate is built from finely processed and large granite slabs, and at the centre of the platform is a gateway in the arched form, a form which came into being during the Koryo dynasty. A one-storied pavilion with a gabled roof stands on the platform. Being three bays at the front and two bays at the side, the pavilion looks simple and yet weighty.
The Namdae Gate is the oldest of all the long-standing gates on the Korean Peninsula, and represents gate building in the last days of Koryo and the early days of Ri dynasty.

On December 25, 1950, the gate pavilion was burned down by US bombing, and only the lower part remained. In 1954, based on photographs taken before the Korean War, the cornerstones of the pavilion and confirmation by the local people, the Kaesong City Designing Enterprise represented the design of the gate pavilion, and thus the Kaesong Namdae Gate was rebuilt. In 1963, 2001 and 2009, two-pillar gates, roof and floor were repaired, respectively, and repainting was undertaken in 2008.
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
2.4.5 Koryo Songgyungwan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Pangjik-dong, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Construction year</td>
<td>1367</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordinates</td>
<td>37° 59’ 19” North, 126° 34’ 22” East</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Koryo Songgyungwan was Kukhak, the highest state educational institution for training officials of the central government in the period of the Koryo dynasty. It is situated around 2.5 km east of Manwoldae.

The site is thick with trees, picturesque and cosy. At first, there was an auxiliary royal palace, called the Taemyong Palace, during the reign of Munjong (from 1047 to 1083), the 11th King of Koryo. Later, it became a guesthouse for foreigners, and from 1089, it was used as a building of Kukjagam. In 1308, Kukjagam developed into Songgyungwan, and the structure was expanded to the present size in 1367.

**Figure 9: General view of Koryo Songgyungwan**

14National educational institution of Koryo built in 992, and predecessor of Songgyungwan. First situated near the Hoebin Gate in the southern part of Kaesong.
Koryo Songgyungwan consists of 17 structures. The whole area is surrounded by a fence, and its ground plan is rectangular, elongated from north to south. There is a gate in the form of a triple gate in the south. The area inside the fence is divided into a lecture-hall compound, a shrine compound and an auxiliary compound. The compounds are divided one another by fences and gates.

Lecture-hall Compound is an area where students studied. At the northern centre of the compound is the Myongryun Hall, a lecture hall, of five bays (19.3m) at the front by two bays (9.34m) at the side. On the east is Hyangsil and on the west is Jongyong House. There are East and West Dormitories for students facing each other with a yard in between in front of the lecture hall. At the back of the hall there is a gate in the form of a triple gate leading to the shrine compound.

Shrine Compound is an area where memorial services for famous Confucian scholars were held. The Taesong Hall is situated in the northern centre of the area. It measures five bays (14.69m) at the front by three bays (9.75m) at the side. Memorial rites for Confucius, founder of Confucianism, were held in the hall. The Eastern Shrine and Western Shrine stand face to face before the hall. Memorial services for famous Korean and Chinese Confucian scholars were held in these buildings. The Kyesong Shrine built in 1740, during the Ri dynasty, stands northwest of Taesong Hall.

The building work of Songgyungwan demonstrates the characteristics of a Confucian educational institution. The overall plane lay-out is quite systematic, and the architectural form and painting of every structure is not gorgeous, but simple.

Songgyungwan, as a unique Kukhak of Koryo, is the oldest among the existing state educational institutions in the history of Korea.

With the move of the capital to Seoul in 1394, another Songgyungwan was set up in Seoul in 1396 as a Kukhak of the Ri dynasty. Though reduced to a local educational institution, Koryo Songgyungwan retained its name, and had a status higher than its counterparts as a local school. In 1392, it was burned down by Japanese invaders. It was rebuilt over nine years, from 1602 to 1610, and repaired on six occasions between 1677 and 1855.

In 1988, Koryo Songgyungwan became the Koryo Museum. On display here now are 10,000 relics unearthed or collected in Kaesong and its vicinity.

---

15 Structure for storing incense.
16 Structure for storing Confucian scriptures.
Figure 10: Koryo Songgyungwan
**2.4.6 Sungyang Sowon**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location:</th>
<th>Sonjuk-dong, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Construction year:</td>
<td>Koryo days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordinates:</td>
<td>37° 58′ 19″ North, 126° 33′ 45″ East</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 11: General view of Sungyang Sowon**

Sungyang Sowon had been a house owned by Jong Mong Ju (1337-1392), a minister of the government in the last days of Koryo. From 1573, Sungyang Sowon was used as a shrine for holding memorial services for Jong Mong Ju, and as a sowon as well. A little way west of here is Sonjuk Bridge, which became famous as Jong Mong Ju, a faithful official of Koryo, was killed on it.

It was divided largely into a main section and auxiliary sections on the right and left.

The Lecture-hall Compound is where students studied. The compound has three terraces. At the centre of the third terrace, the highest part stands a Hall. The hall measures five bays (12.78m) at the front by three bays (6.4m) at the side. On the sides of the second terrace are the East and West Dormitories of the students.

Shrine Compound is the place where memorial services for Jong Mong Ju and other famous Confucian scholars were held. It measures four bays (9.43m) at the front by two bays (4.83m) at
In 1633 and 1645, the lecture hall and the shrine were repaired, respectively, and the whole of the school underwent repair in 1823. In 1865, when of the 1,000 sowon across the country only 47 remained, the others having been abolished, Sungyang Sowon was one of the 47 that were left untouched. From 1894, it was used for teaching Chinese characters. For three years from 1907, it was renamed Pochang School, and later it was used as a venue for a short course in teaching Chinese characters. In those days, the outer gate was changed to a triple gate.
Figure 13: Sungyang Sowon
2.4.7 Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location:</th>
<th>Sonjuk-dong, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Construction year:</td>
<td>Early days of Koryo for Sonjuk (correct year not confirmed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Phyochung M onuments -- north monument: 1740, south monument: 1872</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordinates:</td>
<td>37° 58’ 26” North, 126° 34’ 04” East</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sonjuk Bridge was used from the early days of Koryo. The bridge became famous after Jong Mong Ju, a government minister of Koryo and faithful to the country, was murdered on the bridge. The Phyochung Monuments were built by the visiting kings of the Ri dynasty in honour of Jong Mong Ju’s loyalty. The bridge and monuments are situated side-by-side about 500 m east of Sungyang Sowon, Jong Mong Ju’s residence.

Figure 14: Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments
2.4.7.1 Sonjuk Bridge

The original name of the bridge was Sonji. The bridge is built of granite, with a structure of stone piers, beams placed on the piers, and flat stone slabs between the beams. There are railings at both edges of the bridge, installed in 1780. Measuring 8.35 m long and 3.36 m wide, the bridge is not large.

Just beside the bridge, there is another bridge, built in 1780 to alleviate the traffic on Sonjuk Bridge; a monument called Upbi (built in 1641) set up in memory of Jong Mong Ju’s loyalty; two monuments (built in 1797 and 1824, respectively) set up in honour of Kim Gyong Jo who had been murdered together with Jong Mong Ju; the Hama Monument (notice stone requiring riders to dismount); a monument commemorating Sonjuk Bridge inscribed with the handwriting of Han Sok Bong (1543–1605), a famous calligrapher of the Ri dynasty; and a monument commemorating the site of the house of Song Yo Wan, an official of Koryo, who, impressed by Jong Mong Ju’s loyalty, took care of Jong Mong Ju’s corpse.

Figure 15: Sonjuk Bridge
Figure 16: Sonjuk Bridge
2.4.7.2 Phyochung Monuments

Phyochung\textsuperscript{17} Monuments are situated west of Sonjuk Bridge, consisting of two monuments housed in a pavilion and surrounded by a fence. At the centre of the eastern part of the fence there is a gate in the form of a triple gate.

In the pavilion, the two monuments stand in the south and north, respectively. The northern one was set up in 1740, during the reign of the 21\textsuperscript{st} king of the Ri dynasty, Yongjo (1725–1776), and the southern one in 1872, during the reign of the 26\textsuperscript{th} King of the Ri dynasty, Kojong (1864–1907).

The monuments consist of turtle-shaped plinths, bodies and heads. Large pieces of granite weighing over 10 tons were finely worked into the plinths. The bodies were made from black marble; the northern one is 3.17 m high and 0.94 m wide, and the southern one is 3.58 m high and 0.94 m wide. The granite heads look like gabled roofs. Carved in bold relief on the lower parts are four dragons rearing up. Their size and artistic representation make them one of the best of the remaining monuments in Korea.

The pavilion, the triple gate and fence were repaired in 1957, 1980 and 2001, respectively.

Sonjuk Bridge and the Phyochung Monuments are historical monuments directly associated with a political event of the last days of Koryo, and the Phyochung Monuments are one of the best representative monuments of the Ri dynasty.

\textsuperscript{17} Phyochung means singing the praises of loyalty and integrity.
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
2.4.8 Mausoleum of King Wang Kon

| Location: | Haeson-ri, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province |
| Construction year: | 943 |
| Coordinates: | 37° 58′ 54″ North, 126° 30′ 29″ East |

This is the tomb of Wang Kon, the founder-king of Koryo. Wang Kon founded Koryo at the age of 41, and ruled the country for 25 years. When he died at the age of 67, he was buried here. The tomb is situated at the southern foot of Mt. Mansu, a branch of Mt. Songak, three km west of Manwoldae. Its eastern, western and northern sides are surrounded by Mt. Mansu, and the southern side faces a small plain. At present, 18 tombs, or 30% of royal tombs of Koryo, are distributed in this area.

The single burial chamber of the Mausoleum is 3.18 m south to north, 3.25 m east to west, and 2.2 m high. It is roofed by a plain stone. The east, west and north walls and the ceiling are plastered with lime and then painted: a blue dragon, a Japanese apricot tree and bamboo on the east wall; a white tiger, a pine tree and a Japanese apricot tree on the west wall; a snake and a turtle (though most parts are erased) on the north wall; and constellations on the ceiling.

The chamber is covered with earth, and screen stone slabs with the twelve zodiac figures in relief surround the earthen mound. Around the screen slabs, there are railings, stone tigers, stone pillars, a stone table, and a stone lantern. On both sides of the two staircases going up to the mound are the statues of four military and civil officials, respectively.

Standing in the shrine area are the Monument to the Reconstruction of the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon, founder of Koryo, set up in 1992, and a marker of the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon and a monument to its repair set up in 1867.

The tomb has been repaired several times. Whenever there was a foreign invasion, the coffins were removed from the royal tombs to safe places and then brought to their original tombs after the invasion was repulsed. The Ri dynasty took measures on seven occasions to preserve the royal tombs of Koryo. In the middle of the 18th century, during the reign of King Yongjo, the stone structures and pavilions at Wang Kon’s tomb were renovated on a large scale. When the royal tombs of Koryo were being repaired in 1857, houses were set up at Wang Kon’s tomb to keep the monuments safe. In the course of these projects, the direction of the screen slabs and stone railings became changed and some stone structures assumed the style of the Ri dynasty.

In 1967-1979, the pavilion for memorial services and the monument house were repaired.
Survey and excavation were carried out in July 1992 by the Archaeological Institute of the Academy of Social Sciences, which revealed the structure of the burial chamber and murals, and led to the discovery of several relics, including a golden sculpture of Wang Kon. In 1994, in accordance with the tradition of repairing the tombs of founder-kings, the exterior structures of the tombs were reconstructed. At that time, the mound was enlarged, and the stone structures and the pavilion for memorial services around the tomb were renovated. The well-preserved burial chamber and murals were not touched. To preserve the murals, they were protected by glass in 1994, and in 2006 and 2007 the detached renders of the walls were reinforced.

**Figure 19: Distant view of Mausoleum of King Wang Kon**

![Figure 19: Distant view of Mausoleum of King Wang Kon](image)

**Figure 20: Mural paintings inside the burial chamber**

![Figure 20: Mural paintings inside the burial chamber](image)
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

Figure 21: Mausoleum of King Wang Kon

1. Mound
2. Terrace
3. Railing post
4. Railing
5. Burial chamber
6. Stone pillar
7. Stone foundation
8. Stone tiger
9. Statue of civil official
10. Statue of military official
11. Stairs
12. Foundation stone
13. Stone table

Gate to the tomb
Shrine
Pavilion for a monument
2.4.9 Seven Tombs Cluster

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location:</th>
<th>Haeson-ri, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Construction year:</td>
<td>13th-14th century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordinates:</td>
<td>37° 59' 13” and 37° 59’ 18” North, 126° 30’ 26”, 126° 30’ 04” East</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The seven tombs are located in a series on a ridge with a valley in front of them. From their architecture, it is assumed that these are royal tombs although the identity of the persons buried there could not be ascertained. On top of the ridge behind the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon, one can find across a valley a long ridge of Mt. Mansu running east to west in parallel with the valley. On the southern ridge there are the seven tombs. The tombs are given numbers in the order of their location from west to east. Tomb No.1 is believed to have been built in the 12th – 13th century, and the others are believed to have been built after the 13th century.

**Figure 22: Distant view of Seven Tombs Cluster**

The tombs have been robbed several times. The tombs were unearthed as follows: Tomb No. 4 (1978), Tomb Nos.1 and 2 (1991), and Tomb No. 6 (1993). The unearthed tombs have a stone coffin chamber, and a lime-plastered flat ceiling. Drawn on the ceiling of Tomb No. 7 is a celestial design.

The mounds are girded with dodecagonal screen slabs, stone railings and stone animals. In front
of the mounds are stone tables, stone pillars, stone lanterns, stone animals and stone figures. Some stone structures were lost or transformed in the process of their repair. The present state is given in Table 3.

**Table 3: Site information of Seven Tombs Cluster**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Tomb No.1</th>
<th>Tomb No.2</th>
<th>Tomb No.3</th>
<th>Tomb No.4</th>
<th>Tomb No.5</th>
<th>Tomb No.6</th>
<th>Tomb No.7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tomb area</strong></td>
<td>3 terraces</td>
<td>3 terraces</td>
<td>3 terraces</td>
<td>3 terraces</td>
<td>3 terraces</td>
<td>3 terraces</td>
<td>3 terraces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Burial chamber</strong></td>
<td>Single chamber, flat ceiling</td>
<td>Single chamber, flat ceiling, coffin support</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>Single chamber, flat ceiling</td>
<td>Single chamber, flat ceiling</td>
<td>Single chamber, flat ceiling</td>
<td>Single chamber, flat ceiling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mural</strong></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Celestial distribution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Screen slab</strong></td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
<td>Twelve-angled, twelve zodiac figures</td>
<td>Twelve-angled, twelve zodiac figures</td>
<td>Nearly round</td>
<td>Twelve-angled, twelve zodiac figures</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>North-South orientation</strong></td>
<td>Screen slab corner</td>
<td>Screen slab corner</td>
<td>Screen slab corner</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>Screen slab corner</td>
<td>Screen slab corner</td>
<td>Screen slab corner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stone railing</strong></td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stone animal</strong></td>
<td>Six tigers</td>
<td>Three tigers</td>
<td>Two tigers, Two sheep</td>
<td>Two tigers, Two sheep</td>
<td>Two tigers</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stone pillar</strong></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Rectangular</td>
<td>Octagonal</td>
<td>Quadrangular Pyramid</td>
<td>Rectangular</td>
<td>Rectangular</td>
<td>Rectangular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stone lantern</strong></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Rectangular</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Rectangular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stone table</strong></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stone image</strong></td>
<td>Two civil officials</td>
<td>Two civil and two military officials</td>
<td>Four civil officials</td>
<td>Two civil officials</td>
<td>Tow civil and two military officials</td>
<td>Four civil officials</td>
<td>Two civil officials and two military officials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Site of shrine</strong></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Relics</strong></td>
<td>Five celadons</td>
<td>Coffin nail, pieces of ceramics, bones etc.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Pieces of ceramics</td>
<td>Jewel, coffin nail, ornaments and pieces,</td>
<td>One Buddhist image, pieces of ceramics, ornaments of coffin, coffin nail, coin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
It is planned to survey the state of the structures, repair the lost or damaged ones, and build up the surroundings.

The Seven Tombs Cluster is testimony to the evolution of the design of the royal tombs of Koryo.

**Figure 23: Tomb No. 3**
Figure 24: Tomb No.1, Seven Tombs Cluster

1. Mound
2. Terrace
3. Railing post
4. Foundation stone
5. Tombstone
6. Stairs
7. Statue of civil official
8. Stone tiger
Figure 25: Tomb No.2, Seven Tombs Cluster

1. Mound
2. Terrace
3. Railing post
4. Scone table
5. Tombstone
6. Stone pillar
7. Stone tiger
8. Stairs
9. Statue of civil official
10. Statue of military official
Figure 26: Tomb No.3, Seven Tombs Cluster

1. Mound
2. Terrace
3. Railing post
4. Stairs
5. Stone table
6. Stone pillar
7. Stone lantern
8. Stone sheep
9. Statue of civil official
10. Statue of military official
Figure 27: Tomb No.4, Seven Tombs Cluster

1. Mound
2. Terrace
3. Stone tiger
4. Stone pillar
5. Foundation stone
6. Statue of civil official
7. Stairs
Figure 28: Tomb No.5, Seven Tombs Cluster

1. Mound
2. Terrace
3. Railing post
4. Stone tiger
5. Tombstone
6. Stone pillar
7. Statue of civil official
8. Statue of military official
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

Figure 29: Tomb No.6, Seven Tombs Cluster

1. Mound
2. Terrace
3. Railing post
4. Railing
5. Tombstone
6. Stone pillar
7. Statue of civil official
8. Statue of military official
9. Stairs
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

Figure 30: Tomb No.7, Seven Tombs Cluster

1. Mound
2. Terrace
3. Railing post
4. Railing
5. Stone lantern
6. Stone pillar
7. Stone table
8. Stone tiger
9. Statue of civil official
10. Statue of military official
11. Stairs
12. Foundation stone

- Roof stone
- Support for light chamber
- Column
- Column stand
- Pedestal
2.4.10 Myongrung Cluster

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Haeson-ri, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Construction Year</td>
<td>Mid-14th century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordinates</td>
<td>37° 58’45” North and 126° 30’01” East</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The cluster is located at the foot of a mountain one km west of the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon. This cluster consists of the Myong Tomb for King Chungmok (1345-1348), the 29th king of Koryo, and two other tombs around it. Myong Tomb (Tomb No.1) is in the west, and Tombs No.2 and No.3 are placed at an interval of 40 meters.

King Chungmok became a king at the age of eight and died when he was 12 years old. His tomb was built the next year, and his body was buried there. In view of the form of their construction, the other two tombs are believed to have been built in the mid-14th century, too.

**Figure 31: Distant view of Myongrung Cluster**

Myong Tomb was unearthed in 1983. The tomb consists of a single burial chamber built with the flat-stone walls, which retain the traces of murals, and the flat ceiling where part of a celestial design still remains.

The external structures of the three tombs are nearly the same as the other royal tombs of Koryo.
Their present state is given in Table 4.

**Table 4: Site information of Myongrung Cluster**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>M yong Tomb (Tomb No. 1)</th>
<th>Tomb No. 2</th>
<th>Tomb No. 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tomb Area</td>
<td>One terrace remained</td>
<td>Four terraces</td>
<td>Four terraces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burial chamber</td>
<td>Structure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Single chamber, flat ceiling</td>
<td>Undiscovered</td>
<td>Undiscovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mural</td>
<td>Undiscovered</td>
<td>Undiscovered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen slab</td>
<td>Nearly rounded, Twelve zodiac figures</td>
<td>Twelve-angled, twelve zodiac figures</td>
<td>Twelve-angled, twelve zodiac figures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North-South orientation</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>Corner of screen slabs</td>
<td>Corner of screen slabs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone railing</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
<td>Twelve-angled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone animal</td>
<td>Four tigers</td>
<td>Four tigers</td>
<td>Four tigers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone pillar</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Rectangular</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone lantern</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone table</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stone image</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Two civil officials, two military officials</td>
<td>Two civil officials, two military officials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site of the shrine</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relics</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 32: Tomb No. 2**
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

Figure 33: Tombs No.1 and No.3, Myongrung Cluster

1. Mound
2. Terrace
3. Railing post
4. Railing
5. Tombstone
6. Stone pillar
7. Tomb marker
8. Stone tiger
9. Statue of civil official
10. Statue of military official
11. Stairs
Figure 34: Tomb No.2, Myongrung Cluster

1. Mound
2. Terrace
3. Railing post
4. Railing
5. Stairs
6. Stone pillar
7. Statue of civil official
8. Statue of military official
2.4.11 Mausoleum of King Kongmin

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location:</th>
<th>Haeson-ri, Kaesong City, North Hwanghae Province</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Construction Year:</td>
<td>1365-1372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coordinates:</td>
<td>37° 58’ 47” North and 126° 28’ 30” East</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The tombs standing side by side are those of King Kongmin, the 31st king of Koryo, and his wife. The western one is that of King Kongmin and the eastern one is that of the queen, Princess Roguk. They are located in the middle of Muson Peak of Mt. Pongmyong three km west of the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon.

*Figure 35: General view of mausoleum of King Kongmin*

When the queen died in 1365, King Kongmin selected the site of the tomb in person, and had a tomb built there. He also had his tomb built it in advance. The project continued for seven years until 1372.

The tomb area consists of four terraces: on the uppermost terrace are the mounds, with screen slabs carved with the Twelve Zodiac Figures surrounding them, and there are railings outside the slabs. Outside the railings, four stone sheep and stone tigers are placed alternately for each mound, to guard the tombs. In front of each mound there is a stone table and stone pillars on the sides of the tables. On the lower third terrace there are stone lanterns and two civil officials
placed symmetrically on each side and a staircase leading to the upper terrace for each tomb. On the second terrace, there are two military officials on each side and staircases at the centre and on both sides. The lowest terrace is sloping land with a passageway at the centre and on the right is a hall for memorial services. On the west is the site of Kwangtongbojeson Temple, which had been built in memory of the king and the queen. On the east is the Monument to Kwangtongbojeson Temple.

The Mausoleum of King Kongmin was unearthed. It has a single chamber (2.97 m east to west, 3 m south to north, and 2.29 m high) with a flat ceiling and a long passageway. The chamber was plastered with lime. The ceiling was decorated with a celestial design, while the east, west and north walls were decorated with the Twelve Zodiac Figures, four on each wall. The paintings are said to have been drawn by the king himself, who was well versed in fine art and left several fine art works.

*Figure 36: Murals inside the Burial Chamber of Mausoleum of King Kongmin*

In other royal tombs of Koryo, it was found that the kings and queens were buried together in one chamber or they were buried separately in different places. The form of double mounds,
found in the tomb of King Kongmin, was followed during the Ri dynasty.

**Figure 37: Arrangements before the mound**

These Mausoleums are well located and outstanding in architectural style and artistic features. The structures around them are preserved in their original state. Representing in a comprehensive way the standards of mathematics, astrology, geography, masonry, sculpture and fine art reached by the Koryo people at the time, the tomb are considered an excellent historical site of the days of Koryo, as well as in the history of the Korean Peninsula.

With the collapse of Koryo in 1392, the tombs became neglected. Some of them were either robbed or damaged, trees around them were felled and private graves began to appear in their compounds. Eventually the government of the Ri dynasty began to take measures to safeguard them. During the reign of King Hyonjong (1660–1674) in particular, trees were planted around the tombs, and tomb-keepers consisting of three households led by a man with the surname Wang were appointed for each tomb with the task of preventing farming, tree felling and holding funeral services near the tombs.

In 1867, the fourth year of the reign of King Kojong, the mounds of 57 royal tombs of Koryo were enlarged and markers set up.

The tombs were robbed on several occasions during the Japanese colonial rule. In 1905 in particular, the Japanese dynamited the back of the Mausoleum of King Kongmin and went into
the tomb, stealing all the relics inside it.

After the Korean War (1950-1953) was over, the Kaesong Conservation Committee of Cultural Relics and Remains surveyed the interior of the Mausoleum of King Kongmin between July and December 1956. From January to June 1989, the shrine was repaired. The Myongrung Cluster and Seven Tombs Cluster were surveyed in 1978, 1983, 1991 and 1993, and their exterior structures also underwent repair.
Figure 38: Mausoleum of King Kongmin

1. Mound
2. Terrace
3. Railing post
4. Railing
5. Stone pillar
6. Stone sheep
7. Stone lantern
8. Stone tiger
9. Statue of civil official
10. Statue of military official
11. Stairs
12. Foundation stone
13. Stone table
14. Shrine
CHAPTER THREE: SIGNIFICANCE OF THE SITE

3.1 Introduction
3.2 Statement of Significance
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
3 SIGNIFICANCE OF THE SITE

3.1 Introduction

1. The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong are living evidence of its social and historical background, the spirituality and emotions of people at that time, and their talents in architecture and the formative arts. They are also evidence testifying to the inheritance and uniqueness in their relationship with the cultural heritage of neighbouring countries and former times.

2. However, the value of the various monuments and sites varies. The value of each Property varies by original usage, historical significance, and the spirituality and talent embodied in the Property.

3. The present state of The Property and its significance are the principal criteria to define their values and to prioritise them for protection, conservation and management. This chapter states the criteria under which property is nominated and the Proposed Statement of Outstanding Universal Value.

3.2 Statement of Significance

1. The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong, incorporating twenty monuments and sites from the Koryo period, testifies to the history and culture of Koryo that existed on the Korean Peninsula for about 500 years between 10th century and 14th century. Koryo was the first unified state on the Korean Peninsula, which helped achieve an integral cultural development of the Korean nation by amalgamating the region and several cultures. This was a significant contribution to the development of the Korean national and cultural identity.

2. The twenty monuments and sites include the site of royal palace, city walls and wall gates that show the ruling base of Koryo, its town planning and its urban defence system and monuments, royal tombs and educational institutions related to Confucianism, Buddhism and Taoism that give an understanding of the political ideas of the ruling circles and the religious and philosophical worldview prevalent in society at that time. The town planning of Kaesong, the site of the royal palace and the royal tombs still preserve the characteristics of the geomantic belief, which had a special meaning for the Koryo people, showing their...
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

3. The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong demonstrates the development of the Korean national and cultural identity by assimilating the cultural, spiritual and political values of the various states that existed on the Peninsula prior to the formation of Koryo and through the interchange of such values with other neighbouring kingdoms over five centuries in Kaesong. They reflect the incorporation of various regional religious and philosophical value systems, such as Buddhism, Confucianism, Taoism and geomancy in various spheres of the state including politics, religion, town planning, urban defence system, architecture and tomb layout principles during the period of the first unified state of Korean nation. The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong therefore exhibit an important interchange of human values over five hundred years within the Korean Peninsula.

4. Five hundred years of existence as a unified state had helped Koryo develop its own unique cultural traditions. Located in Kaesong, that had been the sole capital of Koryo and the political, economic, cultural and educational centre of the country during the entire period of its existence, the Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong bears exceptional testimony to the development of Korean cultural traditions that are still part of the living society today. The Property comprises the oldest and most representative elements of the cultural traditions of Korea that contributed to the diversity of the world culture.

5. The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong represent one of the most important stages in the cultural development of East Asia when Buddhism was giving way to Confucianism and becoming locally indigenous with the wide spread and consolidation of the Doctrines of Zhu Xi, while the closed towns were developing into the open towns with the economical and commercial growth, and constitute an excellent example of the days of Koryo, which made a contribution to the development of a cultural identity unique to Korea. Koryo culture, based on earlier cultural traditions, reached its highest stage in Kaesong, its capital, and The Property, which incorporates the most important components of the capital, shows its unique principles of layout of city, royal palace and tombs inside the peculiar cultural landscape of Kaesong.
6. The Property is well preserved and maintained through several restoration and repair from their first construction. Most of them retained their functions until about 100 years ago, thus they are adequately authentic in respect to use and function, form and design, traditions and techniques, and spirits and feelings. Most parts of the site of the royal palace have been preserved in their original state. The Kaesong Walls still preserve the size and components sufficient for showing their value. Koryo Songgyungwan, Sungyang Sowon, the Phyochung Monuments and the royal tombs convey their original architecture and layout.

7. All of the components of The Property have now been designated as objects of national preservation. The proposed core zones and buffer zone include all the elements and sufficient relations necessary to prove the Outstanding Universal Value of The Property. Thus, the values of The Property are proved in a comprehensive way by the individual sites and through the relationship between them and between the sites and the natural environment surrounding them collectively. The site of the royal palace and a large part of the Kaesong Walls are archaeological sites, and these are planned to be unearthed in the near future. The remaining wall parts and gates have been preserved following the original design and using the same type of materials and techniques. Other sites, such as the Kaesong Namdae Gate, Koryo Songgyungwan, Sungyang Sowon, the Phyochung Monuments and other wooden structures, are repaired using original materials and based on traditional architectural techniques while scientific and technical measures have been taken to prevent damage from blights and natural weathering in line with the characteristics of the materials. As for the royal tombs and wooden structures, special attention is paid to prevent damage from such natural disasters as landslides, flooding and typhoons. Regarding stone structures seriously damaged or eroded, repairs or restoration works have been carried out using the same type of design and materials. Even though Kaesong is active in the industrial development and tourism, any negative pressures do not exist in reality to affect The Property.

8. The Property is currently protected under the Law of the DPR Korea on Protection of Cultural Property and being managed jointly by the National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation, The Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office, and the Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon. The general state of their conservation is very good. To better manage The Property, including the buffer zone, and to systematically coordinate all conservation measures, a Management Plan has been developed.
CHAPTER FOUR: MANAGEMENT CONTEXT

4.1 Ownership
4.2 Protective designation and relevant laws
4.3 Management regime for the site
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
4 MANAGEMENT CONTEXT

4.1 Ownership

1. All the cultural property in the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea is owned by the state. Therefore, The Property is state-owned.

2. The Cultural Preservation Department of Kaesong City People’s Committee is in charge of The Historic Monuments and Sites in the core zone, while the Urban Management Bureau, the Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation and the Kaesong City Cooperative Farm Management Committee are in charge of the buffer zone. The Urban Management Bureau is in charge of all the buildings, facilities, roads, rivers, parks, recreation areas, etc. in the precinct of the city region; the Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation is in charge of forests, land, roads, rivers, lakes, reservoirs, etc. in the periphery of the protection areas; and the Kaesong City Cooperative Farm Management Committee is in charge of the crop lands in the buffer zone.

4.2 Protective designation and relevant laws

1. The principal law guiding the protection and management of The Property is:

   *Law of the D.P.R. Korea on Protection of Cultural Property (March 24th, 1994).*

   Other related laws are:

   *Land law of the D.P.R. Korea (April 29, 1977),

   *Law of the D.P.R. Korea on Environmental Protection (April 9, 1986),

   *Law of the D.P.R. Korea on City Management (January 29, 1992),

   *Forest Law of the D.P.R. Korea (December 11, 1992)*

2. Cultural property in the D.P.R. Korea is classified into National Treasure Sites and Preservation Sites according to its historical significance as well as its formative and artistic value. The National Treasure Sites and the Preservation Sites are also protected by the state, but are distinguished according to their historical and cultural value. The evaluation of cultural heritage is deliberated by the State Historical Property Deliberation
and Evaluation Committee. The evaluated and registered historical sites are protected by the state. All kinds of acts that cause damage to them will be considered as an infringement on state ownership and will be subject to administrative and penal punishment as stipulated in the *Law of the D.P.R. Korea on Protection of Cultural Property*.

3. The protective designations on The Property are shown in the Table 5.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Designation</th>
<th>Registered Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manwoldae</td>
<td>National Treasure Site</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Chomsongdae</td>
<td>National Treasure Site</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Walls</td>
<td>National Treasure Site</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
<td>National Treasure Site</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koryo Songgyungwan</td>
<td>National Treasure Site</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sungyang Sowon</td>
<td>National Treasure Site</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sonjuk Bridge</td>
<td>National Treasure Site</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phyochung Monuments</td>
<td>National Treasure Site</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td>National Treasure Site</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seven Tombs Cluster</td>
<td>Preservation Site</td>
<td>544</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myongrung Cluster</td>
<td>Preservation Site</td>
<td>549</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>National Treasure Site</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. By reassessing the values of the Preservation Sites, it is planned to register them as National Treasure Sites.
4.3 Management system for the site

4.3.1 Administrative system for preservation of the cultural property

4.3.1.1 National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation (NBCPC)

The National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation is the supreme guidance organ in charge of the preservation and management of the historical sites and relics across the country. It has specialized departments in charge of property, construction, science and technology, museums, scenic spots, natural monuments and so on.

The NBCPC undertakes to:

- Assess, register, protect and manage the property;
- Prepare regulations and policies to implement the Law on Protection of Cultural Property;
- Provide directions for the work of the departments of cultural preservation under provincial people’s committees and the cultural property management offices, and guide and control the management process; and
- Organize the presentation and awareness-building activities for the promotion of the cultural property.

4.3.1.2 Cultural Preservation Department of the Kaesong City People’s Committee, North Hwanghae Province

The Cultural Preservation Department is a department of the Kaesong City People’s Committee that takes charge of the protection and management of the cultural and natural property. Therefore, it is one that is liable for the protection and management of The Property.

The department, under the guidance of the NBCPC, works out long-term and annual plans for the protection and management of the historical sites under its care, and guides and controls the cultural property management offices (full-time management agencies under it) to execute the plans to the letter. It also guides and controls the institutions charged with public management to protect the sites in a responsible way.
4.3.1.3 Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office and Management Office for the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon

The Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office and the Management Office for the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon are organs that undertake protection and management of the sites under their care under the guidance of the Cultural Preservation Department of the Kaesong City People’s Committee. They protect the sites from potential danger of damage, undertake restoration and management of the sites and improve the surroundings.

They consist of experts and craftsmen specializing in various fields such as history, architecture, masonry, carpentry, fine arts, etc., and have manpower for the restoration of the sites. They ensure a smooth process of management by site managers and the public institutions for the management of sites.

4.3.1.4 Site managers

Site managers are responsible for the protection and management of the sites. They have the knowledge needed for preserving the sites and are qualified to guide visitors.

They work out plans for the protection and management of the sites and execute them under the administrative guidance of the cultural property management offices; when faced with any unusual events that may have impact on protection of the sites, they take measures immediately and report it to their senior organs.

4.3.1.5 Site controllers

A site controller is in charge of several sites and patrols them to get acquainted with the conditions of preservation, and bring any unusual issues to the management office to take measures immediately.

4.3.1.6 Institutions authorized with public management of sites (provide detailed information on how this works)

Provincial, city and county people’s committees allocate cultural sites and relics to local institutions, enterprises, organizations and schools to ensure regular public management as stipulated in Article 49 of Chapter 6, the Law on Protection of Cultural Property, D.P.R. Korea. Quote from the law.
Article 49 (Assignment of responsibility of the preservation and management of cultural property)

Cultural property preservation guidance agencies, local power organs and other relevant bodies shall assign responsibility for the preservation and management of cultural property to the local state organs and other interest groups in the areas under their jurisdiction, integrate cultural property protection plans into the local development plans and implement them without fail.

They participate in the protection and management of the sites and regularly monitor any acts which might affect site protection under the direction of the city and county people’s committees and cultural property management offices.

The authorized institutions participating in the on-site management of The Property are shown in Table 6.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Institutions</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manwoldae &amp; Kaeson Chomsongdae</td>
<td>Kaeson M anwol Secondary School</td>
<td>Songak-dong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaeson Walls</td>
<td>Kaeson Sungjon Secondary School</td>
<td>Sungjon-dong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kaeson Songdo Cooperative Farm</td>
<td>Songak-dong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kaeson Tokam Cooperative Farm</td>
<td>Tokam-ri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaeson Namdae Gate</td>
<td>Kaeson M anwol Secondary School</td>
<td>Pukan-dong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koryo Songgyungwan</td>
<td>Koryo M useum</td>
<td>Pangjik-dong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sungyang Sowon</td>
<td>Kaeson Tongwon Secondary School</td>
<td>Sonjuk-dong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sonjuk Bridge &amp; Phyochung Monuments</td>
<td>Kaeson Unhak Secondary School</td>
<td>Sonjuk-dong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
<td>Kaeson Haeson Cooperative Farm</td>
<td>Haeson-ri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seven Tombs Cluster</td>
<td>Kaeson Haeson Cooperative Farm</td>
<td>Haeson-ri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myongrung Cluster</td>
<td>Kaeson Haeson Cooperative Farm</td>
<td>Haeson-ri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mausoleum of King Kongmin</td>
<td>Kaephung Agricultural College</td>
<td>Kaephung-dong</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.3.2 Consultation system

Apart from the administrative system, there is the Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee, a non-standing organization. This committee includes the head officials of various fields such as education, culture, construction, land and environment and agriculture together with those of relevant social organizations and the judicial and procuratorial institutions in Kaesong (see Appendix 3).

The committee meets twice a year to discuss the implementation of the national policies and laws related to the protection of cultural property and take proper measures. It has discussions on the issues proposed by the Cultural Preservation Department of the Kaesong City People’s Committee, assigns tasks to its staff and has the authority to call to account under criminal law, if needed.

4.3.3 Research works on the sites

1. Historical and archaeological research on the sites is carried out by the Institute of Archaeology and Institute of History of the Academy of Social Sciences, History Faculty of Kim Il Sung University and the Korean Cultural Preservation Centre (KCPC).

2. Scientific and technical research for conservation of the sites is undertaken by the KCPC. The NBCPC, if necessary, requests the State Academy of Sciences to carry out specific
research and the research results are applied to the historical sites by the KCPC.

4.3.4 Administrative system for protection of the buffer zone

4.3.4.1 Ministry of Urban Management

The Ministry of Urban Management is the central guidance organ, which organizes and guides, under the guidance of the Cabinet, management of all the cities in the country. The ministryformulates regulations and policies related to urban management, clarifies directions of work for the Urban Management Bureaus under the people's committees of provinces (or cities under the direct jurisdiction of the central authority), and regulates their work for urban management.

4.3.4.2 Urban Management Bureau of the North Hwanghae Provincial People's Committee

The Urban Management Bureau is a provincial-level organ that organizes and guides in a unified way urban management in the counties (cities). Under the guidance of the Ministry of Urban Management, it formulates long-term and annual plans for urban management in the towns of counties (cities) and guides their correct execution.

4.3.4.3 Urban Management Bureau of the Kaesong City People's Committee

The Urban Management Bureau of the Kaesong City People's Committee, under the guidance of the Urban Management Bureau of the North Hwanghae Provincial People's Committee, a county-level organ, supervises urban management in Kaesong, such as repairing houses, public buildings, drainage and sewage network, roads, parks, recreation grounds and other public facilities and sprucing up the city. Under the bureau are the House Repairing Office, Public Building Repairing Office, Water Supply and Drainage Office, City Management Construction Materials Enterprise, Botanical Garden, Tree Nursery, Horticultural Office, Structures Maintenance Office, City Management Designing Office, City Management Materials Agency, City Management Supervision Team, Land and Structures Building Registration Office and other specialized urban management organs.

4.3.4.4 Ministry of Land and Environmental Conservation

The Ministry of Land and Environmental Conservation is a central guidance organ under the cabinet that organizes, guides, supervises and controls in a unified way the land and
environmental conservation of the country. It formulates regulations and policies related to land and environmental conservation, clarifies directions of work for the Management Bureaus for Land and Environmental Conservation of provinces (or cities under the direct jurisdiction of the central authority), and regulates their implementation.

4.3.4.5 Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation of the North Hwanghae Provincial People’s Committee

The Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation of the North Hwanghae Provincial People’s Committee is a provincial-level organ, which, under the guidance of the Ministry of Land and Environmental Conservation, formulates long-term and annual plans according to the regulations and policies for land and environmental conservation, and conducts its activities through the management bureaus for land and environmental conservation of the county (city) people’s committee.

4.3.4.6 Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation of the Kaesong City People’s Committee

The Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation of the Kaesong City People’s Committee is a county-level organ that organizes, guides and supervises, under the guidance of the Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation of the Kaesong City People’s Committee, land development and environment conservation in the city in a unified way. Under the bureau are the Forest Management Office, Motorway Management Team, Sachon River Management Office, Land and Resources Conservation Supervision Team, Land Development Designing Office, Forest Designing Office, Nature Protection Union and other specialized management organs for land and environmental conservation.

4.3.4.7 Ministry of Agriculture

The Ministry of Agriculture is a central guidance organ that organizes and guides overall agricultural production of the country, under the Cabinet. It formulates regulations and policies related to agriculture, gives directions of work to the rural economy committees of provinces (or cities under the direct jurisdiction of the central authority), and regulates their implementation.
4.3.4.8 Rural Economy Committee of North Hwanghae Province

The Rural Economy Committee of North Hwanghae Province is a provincial-level guidance organ which organizes and directs overall agricultural production in the province. It formulates long-term and annual plans for agricultural production, gives directions of work to the cooperative farms management committee of every county (city), and regulates their implementation.

4.3.4.9 Kaesong City Cooperative Farm Management Committee

The Kaesong City Cooperative Farm Management Committee is a county-level guidance organ that manages the cooperative farms in Kaesong City, under the Rural Economy Committee of North Hwanghae Province. It conducts its activities through the cooperative farms, factories and enterprises belonging to it.
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
CHAPTER FIVE: MANAGEMENT ISSUES AND OBJECTIVES

5.1 Introduction
5.2 Conservation
5.3 Management of the Historic Landscape of Kaesong
5.4 Research and Documentation
5.5 Site Presentation, Interpretation and Education
5.6 Access and Control
5.7 Vision for the Future
5.8 Overall Objectives
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
5 MANAGEMENT ISSUES AND OBJECTIVES

5.1 Introduction

1. This chapter states the problems arising in managing The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong and the long-term and short-term objectives to solve these problems.

2. Issues in managing The Property should be viewed from various angles.

3. The Property can suffer damage from natural and human pressures overtime. The damage may occur in various forms, depending on site characteristics and conditions. It is therefore crucial to take proper measures to maintain the sites’ physical conditions.

4. Maintaining the settings of the sites is one of the crucial issues in conserving and managing the sites. The historical sites are generally linked with their settings. Even though they are well-conserved, future developments may affect them. In this sense, relations between the sites and their settings may be said to be organically inseparable.

5. To enhance current conservation measures, adequate studies on The Property should be carried out as a matter of priority and comprehensive information about various aspects of the sites provided. If this is done, the management of the sites can be practical and solid.

6. Presentation, interpretation and education play an important role in promoting public awareness of the significance of the sites and enlisting ordinary people in their protection and management. In particular, education of the next generation should seek to implant the spirit of taking good care of The Property in them, seeing they will be masters of a future society.

7. Access to the sites will help people to have a better understanding of them. However, access without proper control and order may give rise to serious consequences for the sites. Therefore, this issue has to be included in the MP.

8. The future management of The Property in Kaesong should not simply be confined to pressures and threats. A vision needs to be set, which establishes the aspirations for how the site should be, addressing not only how its value will be safeguarded but also enhanced and experienced.

9. Hence, this chapter describes management issues separately under the headings “site conservation”, “management of the buffer zones”, “research and documentation”, “site
presentation, interpretation and education”, “access and control” and “vision for the future”, and sets out long-term and short-term objectives to solve these issues.

5.2 Site Conservation

1. All the sites face the threat of physical decay because of ageing or from other natural or man-made causes. There is a clear need for regular maintenance and conservation of the monuments and sites.

2. In Manwoldae, some parts of the terraces are structurally unstable. The site is being affected structurally by dense vegetation (e.g., grass and shrubs). It is also a problem that the greenhouse in the compound of the site damages the setting of Manwoldae. It is necessary to restore the terraces and structures and carry out clearing of dense vegetation twice a year by mobilizing the organs authorized with public management, keeping in touch with the Kaesong City People’s Committee. Moving of the greenhouse is on the way.

3. In the Kaesong Walls, some parts of the stone walls are structurally unstable, with most parts of the clay walls having been washed away by rain. In addition, the roots of shrubs within the site area may cause structural changes to the stone walls by getting into the foundations. Measures authorized by the Kaesong City People’s Committee are taken to restore the structurally unstable parts of the stone walls, perhaps by mobilizing the public, e.g., to reconstruct the clay walls, lay turf and remove the shrubs within the site area.

4. The main problem that needs to be addressed in conserving the entire architectural heritage including the Kaesong Namdae Gate, Koryo Songgyungwan, Sungyang Sowon and Phyochung Monuments is the decay of timbers and roof tiles, the main building elements. Some of the columns are cracked or decayed, and some have become hollowed out. Rafters and other upper structures are decayed, and are in danger of structural change; e.g., there are structural changes in the walls of the West Dormitory and Shrine in the Koryo Songgyungwan. The causes are the low level of conservation techniques to prevent decay of timbers and roof tiles and the ineffectiveness of the insecticides used to prevent insect attacks. Inadequate funds and supply of materials owing to economic difficulties is also one of the problems. Research into the prevention of decay of the timbers and roof tiles and damage by insects, as well as supply of adequate funds and materials, are crucial. At present, Koryo Songgyungwan is being used as the Koryo Museum, and it is planned to move the museum to another place.
5. There are different problems in the conservation of the tombs such as the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon, Seven Tombs Cluster, Myongrung Cluster and the Mausoleum of King Kongmin. Acute in the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon is the conservation of the mural paintings. Bulging and deformation of the painted walls are extensive due to a lack of adhesion between render and support wall and between the layers of render. In particular, the decreasing cohesion of the paint layer has resulted in scaling and flaking and even a loss of paint. In the Seven Tombs Cluster, rain has washed soil down the slope and deposited it at the back of the mounds. Some tombs are short of structural elements because restoration was unable to follow up natural damage. In the Mausoleum of King Kongmin, some stone structures have been deformed, and timbers and roof tiles of the shrine are decayed. Restoration of the stonework and conservation of the shrine need to be undertaken. Stone decay due to lichens is common in the tombs, requiring urgent measures to remove them.

5.3 Management of the Buffer Zone

1. The majority of the local people in Kaesong recognize the importance of The Property in the city only in historical and archaeological terms; they are not well aware of the value and importance of the buffer zone that contains The Property and its surroundings. Settings play an important role in understanding the values of The Property. However, if The Property is properly conserved without any consideration on the development in the perimeter encroaching on it, The Property will be negatively impacted and find itself lose in value. The physical conservation of The Property should be accompanied by the conservation of the surrounding environment. Some development activities that have a negative impact on conservation should be limited, and if necessary, suspended. Ensuring a balance between conservation and economic development in the buffer zone is something the local people in Kaesong should strive for. To realize that, it is important to promote public awareness, and the Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee, a consultative body (see 4.3 and Appendix 3) involving members of all the guidance organs concerned with the management of the buffer zone, should be built up, with its role enhanced.

2. The problems arising in the buffer zone are also attributable to the lack of guidelines for ensuring that all development projects in the zone are undertaken on the principle of conserving the environment of The Property. As a consequence, development projects are undertaken spontaneously, endangering the environment of The Property. Typical examples
are the access road to the Janamsan Hotel and the narrow road behind the Myongrun Cluster. According to the long-term plan for the urban construction of Kaesong, new houses as well as roads are to be built in certain parts of the urban area, one-storied old houses are to be renovated in the national style, and parks built in some hilly areas. This plan is designed not to damage the natural landscape of Kaesong including M t. Songak in the north, M t. Ryongsu in the south, M t. Puhung and Tokam Peak in the east and M t. Jine in the west, as well as the settings of The Property, on the basis of the principle to safeguard the values of the sites (see Map 12: Long-term Plan for Urban Construction in Kaesong). No factory is planned to be built in the urban area. No large-scale development project is planned in the forest and rural area. As the old houses to be renovated in the national style are one-storied, there is no trouble in taking away the view of the city. In addition, as the parks are planned to be built far away from The Property, they will not affect The Property. The problem is how to regulate the heights of the buildings to be built so that they will not have any impact on the surrounding environment and its natural beauty. A set of guidelines for buffer zone management are now being formulated to help achieve this and will be completed in 2011 to take legal effect.

3. Another problem is how to deal with the growing demands of modern life. The Old Residential Quarter within the buffer zone plays an important role in further enhancing the features of Kaesong as an ancient city. The risks have always existed, e.g., structural changes carried out to the traditional houses in the old residential quarter. Therefore, it is crucial to promote awareness of the value of the old quarter among its inhabitants so that they may refrain from changing the unique features of the traditional-style houses.
Map 12: Long-term Plan for Urban Construction in Kaesong

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
Figure 40: Old Residential Quarter in Kaesong City

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
5.4 Research and Documentation

1. Research is necessary to improve the understanding of historical, archaeological and environmental values of the sites and to make better management decisions. Research on The Property has already been carried out in various fields, and their results made available to the public through essays and publications. However, there are still several issues waiting to be solved.

2. The first issue is a shortage of records and documents, many of which were plundered or lost in troubled times in the past. For example, the heroes of Tombs No. 2 and No. 3 of Myongrung Cluster and of the Seven Tombs Cluster are yet to be identified.

3. There is a need to complete documentation that can provide comprehensive information about each site, and to develop information software in accordance with modern science and technology.

Figure 41: Excavation on the Western Group of Buildings at Manwoldae
5.5 Site Presentation, Interpretation and Education

1. Public presentation of The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong is not adequate. This is due to a lack of understanding that the presentation of The Property through the mass media can bring about an increase in public awareness, as a consequence of which the cultural preservation agencies have failed to stay in regular contact with the media. To encourage broad presentation and interpretation of the sites it is necessary for the agencies to stay in close contact with the media.

2. The contents of the publications presenting and interpreting the sites are not interesting. It is important to enrich the contents of publications to attract people. It is crucial to improve the level of site presentation and interpretation through effective introduction of modern technology, and by further enriching the contents of interpretation.

3. In the education of the next generation, raising awareness of the significance of The Property in a way that is appropriate to ages and psychology falls short of what is needed. Many more reference books need to be published that are aimed at them, and more effort put into post-school education. In particular, pupils and students in Kaesong should be encouraged to participate in protecting the sites voluntarily, showing pride in their native town.

5.6 Access and Control

1. One problem with access are the facilities for visitors. While Koryo Songgyungwan, Sungyang Sowon, Sonjuk Bridge, Phyochung Monuments, Mausoleum of King Wang Kon and Mausoleum of King Kongmin are provided with facilities for visitors, though on a minimum level, other sites do not have any adequate visitor facilities and having them placed appropriately so as to protect the sites are essential. To meet increasing demands for tourism in the future, providing adequate facilities and an increasing number of guides are main issues. Visitor facilities should be provided on the principle that maintaining the historical settings intact is paramount. To achieve this, draft plans for visitor facilities should be prepared for each site.

2. The small road beside Koryo Songgyungwan may make it problematic to conserve the settings of the site. With tourism becoming brisk in this area, the road may be considered for upgrading or widening, and so the situation should be monitored to prevent this.
3. There should be a plan for managing visitors. Although nothing untoward has happened so far with respect to the management of visitors, a detailed plan should be made to deal with the expected increase in visitors.

Figure 42: Parking lot at Mausoleum of King Wang Kon

Figure 43: Visitors to Koryo Songgyungwan
5.7 Vision for the Future

1. The vision for the future of The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong should be to maintain, protect and improve their cultural significance and settings and to make them educational places to raise public awareness of them. The vision may be summarized as follows:

   A living, sustainable place, where its architectural, historical and archaeological significance are safeguarded;

   A city of a living historical tradition with a strong reference to the past;

   A focus of great popularity and attention to the cultural significance of the site;

   A place of learning that will attract the broad masses and the growing generations; and

   A place of emotion, where people of all nationalities and professions are inspired by its unique character and beauty, and its rich living history.

2. The Management Plan, with a view to achieving this vision for the future, sets out the following Overall Objectives.

5.8 Overall Objectives

The overall objectives are divided into long-term and short-term objectives.

5.8.1 Long-term Objectives (2011-2020)

Long-term Objectives are to:

1. Conserve, protect and improve the cultural significance of The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong;

2. Develop the conservation techniques of the sites decisively;

3. Control all the development activities in Kaesong on the principle of protecting The Property and its settings;

4. Provide cooperation and consistency among the full-time management organs and local people in the conservation of The Property and its settings;

5. Put more efforts into monitoring development activities in Kaesong;
6. Further deepen research on the historical and archaeological significance of The Property;
7. Complete documentation of The Property and continue to renew it;
8. Actively introduce and present The Property to the whole society;
9. Newly carry out site presentation and interpretation in various forms and ways, by continuous introduction of achievements of modern science and technology to call for people’s attention and interest;
10. Constantly improve the educational content for the growing generations;
11. Provide adequate facilities and conditions for visitors; and
12. Establish appropriate behaviour rules for visitors.

5.8.2 Short-term Objectives (2011-2015)

Based on the long-term objectives, the first five years’ objectives are set out to:

1. Maintain the cultural significance of The Property;
2. Reinforce research to improve the techniques for conservation of The Property and call for constructive suggestions for building management capacity;
3. Enhance the role of the Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee in to control all the development activities in Kaesong on the principle of protecting The Property and its settings;
4. Draw up guidelines to coordinate all the development activities in Kaesong on the principle of conserving The Property and its settings;
5. Monitor all development activities in Kaesong on a regular basis;
6. Complete the archaeological survey of the sites now under way;
7. Build a database for the management of The Property;
8. Introduce and present The Property broadly, keeping in contact with mass media;
9. Launch construction of public amenities at The Property with poor visitor conditions; and
10. Establish appropriate rules of behaviour for visitors.
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
CHAPTER SIX: IMPLEMENTATION OF MANAGEMENT PLAN

6.1 Agencies for Implementing the Plan and their Roles
6.2 Fund raising
6.3 Action Plan
6.4 Monitoring & Review of the Plan
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
6 IMPLEMENTATION OF MANAGEMENT PLAN

6.1 Agencies for Implementing the Plan and their Roles

6.1.1 Agencies for Implementing the MP

The agencies for implementing the MP are set out in the following sections.

1) National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation (NBCPC)
2) Kaesong City People’s Committee, North Hwanghae Province
3) Cultural Preservation Department, Kaesong City People’s Committee
4) Urban Management Bureau, Kaesong City People’s Committee
5) Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation, Kaesong City People’s Committee
6) Kaesong City Cooperative Farm Management Committee
7) Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office
8) Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon
9) Other partners:
   - Mass media
   - Scientific research institutions
   - Institutions authorized with public management of sites

The roles of key agencies are set out in the next section.

6.1.2 National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation (NBCPC)

To control and review implementation of the MP with a sense of responsibility under the direction of the Cabinet as the supreme leading agency at the national level;

To ensure that The Property in Kaesong is conserved in all its authenticity and integrity, in full accordance with the international standards outlined in the World Heritage Convention, its Operational Guidelines and complementary instruments and recommendations adopted by the
UNESCO General Assembly;
To monitor the implementation and propose the legal regulations, policy documents and codes of practice regarded effective to the implementation of the MP;
To endorse the items of the plan worked out by the Cultural Preservation Department of the Kaesong City People’s Committee for the implementation of the MP;
To approve/reject the issues relating to the definition of the boundaries of the site areas (core area);
To approve/reject the problems arising from development pressures in Kaesong (demolition, rebuilding or new construction, refashioning of existing buildings which would harm their authenticity or integrity, agriculture, forestry, or grazing, poorly managed tourism, and creation of new living quarters on or near the sites, that may harm the sites or their settings);
To decide on all the proposals for research work, suggested by the cultural property management offices;
To provide information from the database as requested by non-governmental bodies;
To keep contact with scientific research institutes including the State Academy of Sciences, Archaeological and Historical Institutes of the Academy of Social Sciences, History Faculty of Kim Il Sung University and Korean Cultural Preservation Centre, to solve the scientific and technical issues raised in conserving and managing the sites;
To promote development and public awareness for the conservation of the sites on the principle of maintaining and preserving the sites, and oversee support;
To decide on national training programs;
To approve budgets on conservation, restoration and construction projects and endorse the plan of budget allocation, submitted by the Cultural Preservation Department of the Kaesong City People’s Committee;
To be responsible for fund-raising;
To arbitrate disputes arising from the implementation of the MP;
To receive reports on activities concerning the protection of The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong; and
To review the effectiveness of the MP and oversee its updating at the end of the first five years in 2015.
6.1.3 Kaesong City People`s Committee, North Hwanghae Province

To undertake the implementation of the MP as a city authority of Kaesong directly through responsible departments (Cultural Preservation Department, Urban Management Bureau, Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation) in close contact with the NBCPC;

To have decision-making power over all development activities in Kaesong so as to exclude any risks that may harm the protection and management of the sites; and

To guide and control the activities of the appropriate departments on a regular basis.

6.1.4 Cultural Preservation Department of Kaesong City People`s Committee

To guide the maintenance activities in implementing the MP on the spot as a local authority at the city or county level in charge of conserving and managing The Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong;

To identify the boundaries of the core areas of the sites;

To monitor and control that the conditions of authenticity and integrity (outlined in the Operational Guidelines for the Implementation of the World Heritage Convention) are ensured in the management of the sites;

To approve the action programmes for implementing the MP, prepared by the Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office, a full-time management agency;

To take immediate measures in case development or any other acts are reported around the sites likely to damage them and their landscape;

To keep close contact with the Urban Management Bureau, Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation of the Kaesong City People`s Committee with respect to maintaining the buffer zone;

To assign the agencies, enterprises, farms and schools around the sites to help take care of management, and coordinate their enlisting in the protection and management of the sites;

To provide the Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee (non-permanent) with the necessary information and oversee the implementation of the proposals adopted by the Committee;

To promote public awareness and ensure building of public amenities, parking lots and hygienic facilities on the sites on the principle of maintaining the sites;
To draw up budgets for conservation, restoration and construction;

To suggest that issues raised in the implementation of the MP be settled with the full weight of the Kaesong City People’s Committee and take necessary measures to deal with them;

To inform in time the NBCPC, the senior institution, of any issues arising from the conservation and management of the sites; and

To receive reports on activities concerning the conservation and management of the sites on a regular basis from the Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office and the Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon, full-time management agencies.

6.1.5 Urban Management Bureau under Kaesong City People’s Committee

To undertake construction and management of the city as a local leading agency at the city (or county) level in charge of urban management of Kaesong;

To identify the boundaries of the core areas of the sites;

To draw up a city construction plan until 2020 in consultation with the Cultural Preservation Department of the Kaesong City People’s Committee and obtain the approval of the Committee;

To control its full-time management agencies, fully aware of the significance of The Property and its settings, to give priority in their work to its conservation;

To promote its full-time management agencies to get fully aware of the practical issues in conserving and managing the areas under their jurisdiction within the buffer zone; and

To report the result of its performance to the Committee on a regular basis.

6.1.6 Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation of the Kaesong City People’s Committee

To undertake management of land in Kaesong as a local leading agency of city or county level;

To identify the boundaries of the core areas of the sites;

To draw up a general plan for land management until 2020 in consultation with the Cultural Preservation Department in Kaesong and obtain the approval of the Committee;

To control its full-time management agencies, fully aware of the significance of the historical landscape of Kaesong to give priority in all their work to its conservation;

To promote its full-time subordinate management agencies to become fully aware of the
practical issues in conserving and managing the areas under their jurisdiction within the buffer zone; and
To report the result of its performance to the Committee on a regular basis.

6.1.7 **Kaesong City Cooperative Farm Management Committee**

To manage agriculture in Kaesong as the local guiding agency of agricultural management at the city or county level;

To identify the boundaries of core areas of the sites; and

To restrict cooperative farms around the core areas of the sites from enlarging their farms to the core areas or development activities such as cultivation and construction around the core areas.

6.1.8 **Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office and Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon**

To draw up a plan for conserving and managing the sites and implement it as executive agencies for The Property in Kaesong at the city or county level;

To identify the boundaries of the core areas of the sites;

To ensure that the conditions of authenticity and integrity outlined in the Operational Guidelines for Implementation of the World Heritage Convention are provided in the conservation and management of the sites;

To appoint site managers;

To monitor the changes made at and around the sites regularly and inform the Cultural Preservation Department of the Kaesong City People’s Committee of the development or act, if any, that damages the sites and their landscape, and take necessary measures;

To keep close contact with the agencies, enterprises, schools around the sites authorized with public management of them;

To ensure the building of public services, parking lots and hygienic facilities on the sites on the principle of maintaining the sites;

To draw up budgets for conservation, restoration and construction;

To inform the Cultural Preservation Department of the Kaesong City People’s Committee of the issues raised in the conservation and management of the sites in time and take necessary
measures;

To receive reports from appropriate site managers on conservation and maintenance of the sites on a regular basis; and

To draw up reports on the implementation of the MP and submit them to the Cultural Preservation Department of the Kaesong City People’s Committee.

### 6.2 Funding

1. Funds to implement the MP are supplied by national and local budgets.

2. The NBCPC, in close contact with the state planning agency and financial and banking institutions, secures from the national budget the funds needed for large-scale repair projects, excavation and survey, scientific research and presentation of the sites.

3. Funds needed for small-scale repair projects and construction of public services for visits are supplied from the local budget by the Cultural Preservation Department of the Kaesong City People’s Committee. The revenue from tourism is also partially channelled to the management of the property.

4. Funds needed for conserving the buffer zone are also supplied from the local budget by the Urban Management Bureau and Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation and Kaesong City Cooperative Farm Management Committee.

### 6.3 Action Plan

Objectives set out in the MP shall be implemented by a wide range of activities. An action plan for implementing the short-term objectives (2011-2015) is as follows.

6.3.1 Site Conservation (Table 7)
### Table 7: Action Plan for Site Conservation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action Plan</th>
<th>Implementing Agencies &amp; Key Partners</th>
<th>Period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manwoldae: To take measures to prevent landslides by flood or heavy rain at the foot of the mountain</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manwoldae: To undertake restoration of the terrace and stone stairs according to the survey data and scientific manual of design in every April and November, the Months of Loving the Cultural Property</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manwoldae: To remove the moss and lichens inhabiting the surface of stones</td>
<td>KCPMO &amp; Hamhung Branch of the State Academy of Sciences</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manwoldae: To strengthen monitoring of the structural stability of the terraces and the four-column staircase before the Hoegyong Hall and other structures of Manwoldae</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manwoldae: To weed and mow the lawn in the area of the property in every summer and autumn on a regular basis</td>
<td>KCPMO &amp; Kaesong City People’s Committee Cultural Preservation Department</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manwoldae: To prevent the property from being damaged by the abnormal climate in regular contact with the meteorological institution</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manwoldae: To monitor the development around Manwoldae on a regular basis</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manwoldae: To move the greenhouse in the region of Manwoldae step by step, followed by rezoning and gardening</td>
<td>Kaesong City People’s Committee</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manwoldae: To regularly undertake dredging the Kwangmyong stream and restore its periphery every year</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Walls: To restore the some crumbled parts of stone and earthen walls</td>
<td>Cultural Preservation Department of Kaesong City People’s Committee</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Walls: To undertake restoration of structurally unstable parts of the walls</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Walls: To remove tall trees and brushwood within the region of the property</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Walls: To inspect the parts damaged by seasonal rain for appropriate measures of repair</td>
<td>Cultural Preservation Department of Kaesong City People’s Committee</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Namdae Gate: To take measures to prevent stones of terraces from decaying</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Namdae Gate: Replacement of damaged floor board</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaesong Namdae Gate: To monitor the structural stability of the building on a regular basis</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koryo Songgyungwan: Taesong Hall: Replacement of decayed rafters, pillars and tiles</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koryo Songgyungwan: East Shrine: Replacement of decayed pillars and tiles</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action Plan</td>
<td>Implementing Agencies &amp; Key Partners</td>
<td>Period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West Shrine: Repair of pillars and replacement of decayed tiles</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kyesong Shrine: Replacement and repair of decayed pillars and tiles</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inner Gate: Replacement and repair of decayed pillars, replacement of decayed tiles</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M Yongryun Hall: Repair of pillars, replacement of decayed tiles</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jongyong Pavilion: Repair of pillars, replacement of decayed tiles</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incense House: Replacement of decayed tiles</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>East Schoolhouse: Repair of pillars, replacement of decayed tiles</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West Schoolhouse: Repair of walls and pillars, replacement of decayed tiles</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main Gate: Repair of pillars, replacement of decayed rafters</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walls: Repair some parts</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To monitor the structural stability of the building on a regular basis</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To move Koryo Museum to the other place</td>
<td>Cultural Preservation Department of Kaesong City People’s Committee</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shrine: Replacement of decayed rafters, pillars and roof tiles, repair of some parts of walls and removal of cemented patches</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three Ilgak Gates: Replacement of decayed roof tiles and partial repair</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>East Schoolhouse: Replacement of decayed roof tiles, painting</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West Schoolhouse: Replacement of decayed roof tiles, painting</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lecture Hall: Replacement of decayed roof tiles and rafters, repair of pillars</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walls: Repair of some crumbled parts</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To monitor the structural stability of the building on a regular basis</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To maintain the Sonjuk Bridge on a regular basis</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To carry out preservation treatment on the monuments around the Sonjuk Bridge</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phyochung Monuments Pavilion: Replacement of decayed rafters, overhaul of roof, painting and repair of pillars</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action Plan</td>
<td>Implementing Agencies &amp; Key Partners</td>
<td>Period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triple Gate: Partial repair</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wall: Partial repair</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To monitor the structural stability of the building on a regular basis</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To clean and repair the drainage around the Pavilion of Phyochung Monuments on a normal basis</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Under the guidance of the experts of the Academy of Sciences and the KCPC following measures should be taken:</td>
<td></td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• To strengthen the adhesion between the lime plaster and stone walls</td>
<td>MOMKW, the Hamhung Branch of the Academy of Sciences and the KCPC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• To prevent crystallization and deposit of salts on the surface of the lime</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• To sterilize and decontaminate the surface of walls to prevent microorganisms from inhabiting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To monitor the stability of stone structures on a normal basis</td>
<td>MOMKW</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To repair all of the Seven Tombs Cluster and arrange its environment</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To find out the lost stones and supplement them in their original place</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To remove the lichens and moss inhabiting the stone surfaces</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To monitor the development around them on a regular basis</td>
<td>MOMKW</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To repair railings and other stone structures and supplement the broken stones with the same materials and design</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To restore the stone screens of Tomb No. 1 as they were, which tilted during repairs in the past</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To monitor the stability of the stone structures and repair them on a regular basis</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To remove the moss and lichens inhabiting the surface of stones</td>
<td>KCPMO, the Hamhung Branch of the State Academy of Sciences and the KCPC</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To remove the moss and lichens inhabiting the surface of stones</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To repair the stone wall and terraces</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To monitor the stability of the stone structures of the tomb and the temple</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To replace the decayed timbers and tiles of the temple</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.3.2 Capacity Building

Capacity building is crucial to making conservation and management of the sites scientific and improving its level. To build the capacity of site management it is necessary to enrich our knowledge of history, archaeology, architecture, painting art, physics, chemistry, biology and landscaping. Besides, the skill of craftsmen such as carpenters, masons, tile workers, plasterers, etc. has to be increased. Therefore, an Action Plan for capacity building is set out in Table 8.

Table 8: Action Plan for Capacity Building

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action Plan</th>
<th>Implementing Agencies &amp; Key Partners</th>
<th>Period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Further enriching the academic content on the basis of achievements in scientific studies in history and archaeology</td>
<td>History Institute and Archaeological Institute of Academy of Social Sciences, KCPC</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuing to reinforce the management staff with well-qualified graduates</td>
<td>NBCPC</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organizing training courses on a regular basis keeping in touch with Hamhung Branch of Academy of Sciences, in order to build the capacity of professionals of masonry and timber materials</td>
<td>NBCPC, Hamhung Branch of State Academy of Sciences</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organizing training courses on a regular basis to impart to the craftsmen traditional techniques needed in conservation and management of the sites</td>
<td>NBCPC</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increasing the number of managers and improve mechanism to deal with expansion of preservative area</td>
<td>KCPMO, MOMKW</td>
<td>2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introducing achievements in conservation techniques in close connection with UNESCO</td>
<td>NBCPC</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actively participating in the training courses or workshops organized by UNESCO as well as WHITRAP (World Heritage Institute of Training and Research for Asia and Pacific Region) to implement World Heritage Convention and enrich the knowledge of conservation and management of the sites</td>
<td>NBCPC</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Management of the buffer zone (Table 9)

**Table 9: Action Plan for Management of the Buffer Zone**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action Plan</th>
<th>Implementing Agencies &amp; Key Partners</th>
<th>Period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Improve the structure of the Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee and enhance its role</td>
<td>Kaesong City People’s Committee, Kaesong City Cooperative Farm Management Committee</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| With a view to protect The Property and its settings, a set of guidelines will be worked out relating to the development plan in the buffer zone and regulate the degree of impact on the preservation of the cultural property in the following scope:  
  - Whether the use, size, height, appearance, materials, colours of the building or facility is in harmony with those of the sites  
  - Limitation of noise and vibration, and release of waste water, harmful gas, chemicals, dirt or heat that may affect the conservation of the sites in the process or after the completion of the project  
  - Excavation that may affect the conservation of the sites  
  - Limitation of volume of water and pollution of water quality  
The Kaesong City People’s Committee shall stop immediately any act of development against the above-mentioned scope of categories and rehabilitate them. | NBCPC, Urban Management Bureau, Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation of Kaesong City People’s Committee, Kaesong City Cooperative Farm Management Committee | 2011     |
| To raise awareness of the importance of the interrelation of the sites with their environs to those working in the cultural preservation, urban management, land and environment, agricultural management agencies in Kaesong | Kaesong City People’s Committee, Kaesong City Cooperative Farm Management Committee              | 2015     |
| To make routine monitoring of all development activities around the sites, and to make an immediate report to the Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee, if abnormal issues are raised | KCPM O, MOMKW                                                                                   | 2015     |
| To prohibit tree felling in the area of Manwoldae and Kaesong Walls and carry on making afforestation stage by stage                               | Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation of Kaesong City People’s Committee, KCPM O | 2015     |
| To raise public awareness of forest fire prevention among residents and visitors                                                                    | Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation of Kaesong City People’s Committee, KCPM O | 2015     |
| To establish a system of mobilizing fire brigade and the masses of people as soon as forest fire breaks out.                                            | Kaesong City People’s Committee                                                                  | 2012     |
| To decontaminate the trees of Mt. Songak once or twice a year to prevent them from damage by blight and harmful insects                            | Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation of Kaesong City People’s Committee, KCPM O | On going |
### Action Plan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action Plan</th>
<th>Implementing Agencies &amp; Key Partners</th>
<th>Period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To make routine cleaning of the riverbed</td>
<td>Urban Management Bureau under Kaesong City People’s Committee, KCPMO</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To remove all the high trees within 30 meters around the tombs</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changing the direction of the small road behind the Myongrung Cluster and the road to Jnam san Hotel running between Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments, stage by stage</td>
<td>Urban Management Bureau, Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation of Kaesong City People’s Committee</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To exercise strict control on any activities that affect the structure of the old residential quarter</td>
<td>Urban Management Bureau under Kaesong City People’s Committee</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To educate the residents in the old residential quarter to make them participate in maintaining their traditional houses with a high sense of responsibility and to prevent any accident</td>
<td>Urban Management Bureau under Kaesong City People’s Committee</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To make routine repair on the dwelling houses of the Old Residential Quarter every spring and autumn</td>
<td>Urban Management Bureau under Kaesong City People’s Committee</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To take measures to identify elements that affect views of the settings of sites such as high buildings and dumps and to improve the landscape by planting trees, turfing the sites and in other various ways.</td>
<td>Urban Management Bureau, Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation of Kaesong City People’s Committee, Kaesong City Cooperative Farm Management Committee</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 6.3.4 Research and Documentation (Table 10)

**Table 10: Action Plan for Research and Documentation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action Plan</th>
<th>Implementing Agencies &amp; Key Partners</th>
<th>Period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Study on old city layout of Kaesong in the Koryo time through historical documentation</td>
<td>NBCPC, Historical Institute of Academy of Social Sciences</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archaeological research of the Western Group of Buildings of Manwoldae</td>
<td>NBCPC</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archaeological research of the Eastern Group of Buildings of Manwoldae</td>
<td>NBCPC</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archaeological research of the major sections of the Kaesong Walls and their typical gates’ sites</td>
<td>NBCPC</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Study on the heroes of Tomb Nos.2 &amp; 3 of Myongrung Cluster and the Seven Tombs Cluster</td>
<td>Archaeological Institute of Academy of Social Sciences, KCPC</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Archaeological research and documentation on environs of Kaesong Chomsongdae, and study on substantial entity of Kaesong Chomsongdae based on sophisticated science and technology</td>
<td>Archaeological Institute of Academy of Social Sciences, KCPC</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete records on all historical property and upgrade information software in accordance with the developing trend of modern science and technology</td>
<td>NBCPC</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 6.3.5 Site Presentation, Interpretation and Education (Table 11)

**Table 11: Action Plan for Site Presentation, Interpretation and Education**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action Plan</th>
<th>Implementing Agencies &amp; Key Partners</th>
<th>Period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To continue research on the historical property to enrich the content of interpretation</td>
<td>NBCPC, Archaeological Institute of the Academy of Social Sciences</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To ensure publishing serially of articles on the cultural property in Kaesong through the magazine, <em>National Cultural Heritage</em></td>
<td>NBCPC, Science and Encyclopaedia Publishing House</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To compile multimedia CDs, 3D projects, picture albums, folded paper, post cards, posters and pamphlets presenting the history and culture of Kaesong.</td>
<td>NBCPC, KCPC</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To work with all mass media to present the historical property of Kaesong in a planned way</td>
<td>NBCPC, Mass media</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To enrich the exhibits and data on relics displayed in museums as the archaeological study progresses further on the historical sites in Kaesong city</td>
<td>NBCPC</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To ensure that the rising generation and the masses have a deep knowledge of our history and culture</td>
<td>NBCPC</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To improve the public awareness on the values of the historical property of Kaesong by means of lectures, discourses and visual aids</td>
<td>Cultural Preservation Department of Kaesong City People’s Committee</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To publish books for students of secondary and tertiary schools</td>
<td>NBCPC</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 6.3.6 Access and Control (Table 12)

**Table 12: Action Plan for Access and Control**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action Plan</th>
<th>Implementing agencies &amp; Key Partners</th>
<th>Period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Drawing up a design on arrangement of public services for visitors in consideration of the actual situation of each site. Visitor facilities and services are: Parking lots, Rest areas and seats, Post and telecommunications, Public services: portable drinking water, litter bins and toilets, Information booths, Professional photography, Food services and catering</td>
<td>Cultural Preservation Department of Kaesong City People` s Committee</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manufacture and installation of displaying boards at Manwoldae, Kaesong Walls, Sungyang Sowon and Mausoleum of King Kongmin, to give intensive lectures about the relevant sites</td>
<td>Cultural Preservation Department of Kaesong City People` s Committee</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construction of new public facilities at recesses in the area of Kaesong Walls and Manwoldae</td>
<td>Cultural Preservation Department of Kaesong City People` s Committee</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preparation of visiting conditions from Pukso Gate to Jinon Gate of the Kaesong Walls by arranging the areas in and around them</td>
<td>Cultural Preservation Department of Kaesong City People` s Committee</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Building parking lots at a hidden place at Koryo Songgugyungwan to meet the increase of visitors, stage by stage, but exceed accommodation capacity of previous one</td>
<td>Cultural Preservation Department of Kaesong City People` s Committee</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equipping the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon with visual-aids in the open air showing the murals inside it</td>
<td>Cultural Preservation Department of Kaesong City People` s Committee</td>
<td>2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moving the parking lot and toilets to a hidden place at the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon, stage by stage</td>
<td>Cultural Preservation Department of Kaesong City People` s Committee</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equipping the information booths with modern audio-visual facilities at the sites in conformity with the increasing number of visitors</td>
<td>Cultural Preservation Department of Kaesong City People` s Committee</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increasing the number of guides and organizing regular training courses to improve their level</td>
<td>NBCPC</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification of accommodation per visit to each site &amp; establishment of order to admit specified number of visitors by shift. Specifying number of visitors refers to the physical, intellectual and environmental capacity of the site.</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action Plan</td>
<td>Implementing agencies &amp; Key Partners</td>
<td>Period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Informing behaviour rules to visitors to prevent any activities damaging the sites and taking strict sanctions against those who damaged the sites</td>
<td>KCPMO, MOMKW</td>
<td>2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Providing conditions for emergency medical services and healthcare for the security of visitors at every site</td>
<td>Cultural Preservation Department of Kaesong City People’s Committee</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installation of signs, interpretation boards and warning boards in Korean and English</td>
<td>Cultural Preservation Department of Kaesong City People’s Committee</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In order to prevent the sites from being damaged owing to overcrowding, the visiting course can be divided into three ways as follows: M anwoldae – Sungyang Sowon – Sonjuk Bridge – Koryo Songgyungwan – Kaesong Walls – Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
<td>Cultural Preservation Department of Kaesong City People’s Committee</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koryo Songgyungwan – Kaesong Walls – Kaesong Namdae Gate – M ausoleum of King Wang Kon – M yongrung Cluster – M ausoleum of King Kongmin – Sungyang Sowon – Manwoldae – Sonjuk Bridge</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M ausoleum of King Wang Kon – M yongrung Cluster – Kaesong Namdae Gate – Kaesong Walls – Koryo Songgyungwan – Sonjuk Bridge – Sungyang Sowon – M anwoldae</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

KCPMO; Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office
MOMKW; Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon
NBCPC; National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation
KCPC; Korean Cultural Preservation Centre
6.4 Monitoring & Review of the Plan

1. The process of implementing the MP should be monitored and reviewed periodically for its success. Hence it is necessary to devise an appropriate work plan and system for the monitoring and reviewing of the MP.

2. The overall monitoring and reviewing of the MP will be undertaken by the NBCPC by:

   Making Annual Action Plan for achieving the objectives of the MP and monitoring relevant actions;

   Monitoring the annually planned actions in relation to conservation and management of The Property through the Cultural Preservation Department of the Kaesong City People’s Committee, the local leading agency for conserving historical sites;

   Submitting an annual report on achievement of the Annual Action Plan through Cultural Preservation Department of Kaesong City People’s Committee to review the process of the implementation of the MP;

   Discussing issues raised in proposed buffer zones relating to the conservation of The Property by holding annual meeting with the Urban Management Bureau, Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation of the Kaesong City People’s Committee and Kaesong City Cooperative Farm Management Committee, key partners participating in the implementation of the MP;

   Ensuring that the above-mentioned organs prepare appropriate programs for implementing the MP and undertake them by keeping contact with other partners;

   Conducting overall review of fulfilment of the Annual Action Plan every year;

   Assessing the effectiveness of actions in achieving the MP’s objectives and reviewing the overall direction of the MP in response to changing priorities; and

   Reviewing the entire MP every five years.
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
Appendix 1. Laws related to the Protection of Cultural Heritage
Appendix 2. Government Organs related to the Management of the Property
Appendix 3. Structure of Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee
Appendix 4. Glossary
Appendix 5. Chronological Table of the History of Kaesong
Appendix 6. Bibliography
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
APPENDICES

Appendix 1: Laws related to the Protection of Cultural Heritage

I “THE LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA ON PROTECTION OF CULTURAL PROPERTY” (March 24, 1994)

II “THE LAND LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA” (April 29, 1977)

III “THE LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA ON ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION” (April 9, 1986)

IV “THE LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA ON CITY MANAGEMENT” (January 29, 1992)

V “FOREST LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA” (December 11, 1992)
THE LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA ON PROTECTION OF CULTURAL PROPERTY

(Extracts)

Adopted as the Decision No.46 of the Standing Committee of the Supreme People’s Assembly of the DPR Korea (March 24, 1994)

Revised by the Decree No.372 of the Standing Committee of the Supreme People’s Assembly of the DPR Korea (January 21, 1999)

Revised and complemented by the Decree No. 3155 of the Standing Committee of the Supreme People’s Assembly of the DPR of Korea (March 31, 2009)

Chapter 1. FUNDAMENTALS OF THE LAW ON PROTECTION OF CULTURAL PROPERTY

Article 1. (Mission of the Law on Protection of Cultural Property)

The Law of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea on Protection of Cultural Property contributes to establishment of strict system and order for protection and management of cultural property, to their preservation in original state, to their proper inheritance and development, and to enhancement of national pride and confidence among the people.

Article 2. (Description of cultural property)

Cultural property constitutes invaluable treasure of the country, which vividly demonstrates the time-honored history and brilliant cultural tradition of our people.

Cultural property includes such historical sites as sites of primitive age, fortresses, beacon fire sites, buildings and their ruins, tombs, pagodas, stone monuments, kiln sites, blacksmith, and such historical relics as working tools, daily necessities, weaponry, artifacts, old books and writings, human fossils and bones.

Article 3. (Ownership of cultural property)

Cultural property shall be owned only by the State. But, movables which have been inherited as the family property may be privately owned.

The State shall not recognize the transfer of ownership of cultural property which has illegally been exported and shall claim its restitution.
Article 4. (Fundamental principle of management of cultural property)

Thanks to the correct policy of protecting cultural property, numerous cultural relics have been discovered, collected and restored in the DPR of Korea.

The State shall consolidate the success which has already been achieved in the field of protection and management of cultural property and increase investment to it on a planned basis to work actively to discover the cultural property, legacy of the nation, and inherit them.

Article 5. (Principle of restoring, reconstructing, protecting and managing the cultural property in conformity to the historical facts and practical reality in development)

It is a consistent policy of the State to protect cultural property.

The State shall pay great attention to protection and management of cultural relics and see to it that they be restored, reconstructed, protected and taken care of in conformity with the historical facts and the requirement of the reality in development.

Article 6. (Principle of protecting and managing cultural relics by the whole nation and society)

Protection and management of cultural property is a nation-wide undertaking which involves the whole of society.

The State shall establish a unified guidance system for protection and management of cultural property and put in force the shared responsibility system for upkeep of cultural sites.

Article 7. (Principle of use of cultural property)

The State shall ensure an extensive use of cultural property to make scientific research into the nation's history and culture, and intensify education of the people in patriotism.

Article 8. (Principle of scientific research for protection and management of cultural property)

The State shall intensify scientific research for protection and management of cultural property and encourage active introduction of advanced scientific and technological achievements to this field.

Article 9. (Exchange and cooperation of the excavation and collection of cultural relics)

The State shall promote exchange and cooperation with foreign countries and international organizations in the field of protection and management of cultural property.

Chapter 2. ARCHAEOLOGICAL EXCAVATION AND COLLECTION OF CULTURAL RELICS

Article 10. (Planned organization of the excavation and collection of cultural relics)

Archaeological excavation and collection of cultural relics is important in enriching the country's
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea

APPENDICES

MANAGEMENT PLAN

cultural treasury.

Cultural property preservation guidance agencies and other relevant bodies shall organize archaeological excavation and collection of cultural relics in a far-sighted planned manner.

Article 11. (Bodies authorized with excavation of cultural relics and its approval)

The excavation of cultural relics shall be undertaken only by the cultural property preservation agencies and other relevant specialized bodies. Nobody can without permission from the central property preservation guidance agency.

Article 12. (Procedures for the permission of the excavation of cultural relics)

Any body or bodies desiring to excavate cultural relics shall submit an application to the central cultural property guidance agency.

Article 13. (Method of excavation of cultural property)

Any body or bodies authorized to undertake excavation of cultural relics shall conduct the work in such a scientific and technical way as to avoid any physical damage on them, and rezone the site immediately after the excavation.

Article 14. (Result of excavation and hand-over of excavated relics)

Any body or bodies that made an excavation shall submit a report on the excavations performed to the central cultural property preservation guidance agency in time determined by it, and the archaeological finds excavated on the sites shall be handed over to relevant cultural property preservation agencies.

Article 15. (Information of discovery of cultural relics)

When an organ, enterprise, organization or individual citizen discovers a site or an object of cultural interest, it or he/she should inform the cultural property preservation guidance agencies or other relevant bodies of its discovery.

The cultural property preservation guidance agencies or other relevant bodies, when informed, shall immediately investigate and confirm the place in question and take necessary steps. Without taking due steps, any projects including construction of structures cannot be undertaken in and around the place.

Article 16. (Collection of cultural relics)

Historical relics shall be collected only by the cultural property preservation agencies.

The cultural property preservation agencies shall regularly organize collection of historical relics.
Special premium shall be granted for any historical relics that have been donated to the State, according to their value.

Article 17. (Disposal of the cultural relics found out in the course of procurement)

Banks, procurement agencies and other relevant institutions shall hand over to cultural property preservation agencies the objects of historical interests which have been found out in the course of procurement.

Chapter 3. EVALUATION AND REGISTRATION OF CULTURAL PROPERTY

Article 18. (Obligatory evaluation and registration of cultural property)

Proper evaluation and registration of cultural property is an important requirement for its protection.

The cultural property preservation guidance agencies and other relevant bodies shall make substantiated evaluation and registration of cultural property.

Article 19. (Organization of the deliberation and evaluation committee of cultural property)

The cultural property is deliberated and evaluated in the central cultural property preservation guidance agency.

A non-permanent State Historical Property Deliberation and Evaluation Committee is established in the central cultural property preservation guidance agency.

Article 20. (Application for appraisal of cultural property)

Any organ, enterprise, organization or individual citizen desiring to have a cultural property evaluated shall submit an application to central cultural property preservation agency. The application shall clarify the name of cultural property, its site, historical time, current state, preservation prospect and preservation site with photographs and a chart.

Article 21. (Method of deliberation and evaluation of cultural property)

The central cultural property preservation guidance agency, after having received the application, shall convene the State Historical Property Deliberation and Evaluation Committee and evaluate the historical time and value of preservation of the appropriate property properly on the principle of historicism.

Cultural property shall be classified into National Treasure, Semi-national Treasure and ordinary preservation cultural property, according to its historical significance as well as its formative and
artistic value.

Article 22. (Registration of cultural property)

The cultural property preservation guidance agencies on approval of the Cabinet shall make a registration of the cultural property which has been evaluated to be of value to preserve. In this case they have to make a proper record of the registered number, name, date of registration, site, area of reserves and etc.

The cultural property determined to be of value of the National Treasure or Semi-national Treasure shall be registered by the central cultural property preservation guidance agency and others by the local cultural property preservation guidance agencies.

Article 23. (Record of change, restoration or repair of the cultural property)

An organ, enterprise, organization or citizen shall make a timely record of change, restoration or repair of the registered cultural property and report the results to the relevant agency with registration authority.

Article 24. (Transfer or renaming of the cultural property)

An organ, an enterprise, an organization or a citizen desiring to abandon, transfer or rename the registered cultural property must get a prior permission from the Cabinet or from the central cultural property preservation guidance agency.

Chapter 4. PRESERVATION AND MANAGEMENT OF CULTURAL PROPERTY

Article 25. (Scientific and technological preservation and management of cultural property)

Careful preservation and management of cultural property is a basic way of preventing their damage and maintaining them in their original state.

Cultural property preservation agencies, relevant organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens should preserve and take good care of the cultural property in a scientific and technological way to suit their specific features.

Article 26. (Those in charge of preservation and management of cultural property)

Cultural property shall be preserved and taken care of by the cultural property preservation agencies, as well as by the relevant organs, enterprise, organizations and citizen.

The cultural property situated in special zones shall be preserved and managed by the relevant cultural property preservation agency and the institution which has the zones under their
jurisdiction.

Organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens must avoid doing any act of damaging cultural property and its protective facilities.

Article 27. (Designation of reserves for historical sites)

The State shall designate reserves for historical sites with a view to preserving them.

The reserves have to be designated in a reasonable way so as to facilitate the preservation and management of the historical property and provide the working people with a satisfactory visit and rest.

The Cabinet shall be responsible for the designation of reserves for historical sites.

Article 28. (Removal of structures in the reserves of historical property)

Cultural property preservation guidance agencies, local government organs, relevant organs, enterprises and organizations shall remove in time the dwelling houses or structures liable to affect the preservation and management of historical property in the reserves.

In case the cultivated land comes in the boundary of reserves the relevant agricultural guidance organ should take measures for recovering substitute land and provide cultural property preservation guidance agency with an appropriate area of land.

Article 29. (Prohibition in the reserves of historical property)

Any following acts are prohibited within the reserves of historical property:

1. Act of tilling land or developing underground resources
2. Act of building dwelling houses or structures without permission
3. Act of dumping waste water or sewage
4. Act of digging or felling trees
5. Act of creating fire risks

Article 30. (Set-up of plaques and explanation boards)

Local power organs and cultural property preservation agencies shall set up plaques and explanatory boards of standard size on historical sites, fence them around with markers and keep their surroundings neat and clean.

Article 31. (Repair, restoration and sterilization of cultural relics)

Cultural property preservation agencies and relevant organs, enterprise, organizations shall repair, restore and sterilize the cultural relics in a planned way.
Repair, restoration and sterilization of the cultural property shall not be allowed without full scientific and technical preparation.

Article 32. (Maintenance of temperature and humidity and prevention of accidents)

Cultural property preservation agencies and relevant organs, enterprise and organizations shall maintain the temperature and humidity appropriate for preservation of cultural property and prevent fire, loss, breakage and other unexpected accidents.

Article 33. (Use of historical relics)

Historical relics may be used for establishment of museums and other purposes related to preservation of cultural property.

When an organ, an enterprise or an organization wants to use historical relics, it must get a permission of the central cultural property preservation guidance agency prior to doing so.

Article 34. (Obligation of the users of historical relics)

The organs, enterprise, organizations and citizens that use historical relics shall preserve them in an original state and take meticulous care of them.

The form of historical relics cannot be modified without permission.

Article 35. (Safe-keeping of historical relics and use of replicas)

Cultural property preservation agencies and other organs, enterprise, organizations concerned shall keep historical relics carefully in special places equipped with necessary facilities and make replicas of vulnerable historical relics of high value for their regular use. In this case approval shall be given by the central cultural property preservation guidance agency.

Article 36. (Photography of cultural property and visit to tomb murals)

The organs, enterprise, organizations and citizens desiring to take pictures of cultural property or visit the tombs with mural paintings must get a permission of the cultural property preservation guidance agencies.

Article 37. (Plan of construction project)

When an organ, an enterprise or an organization plans a construction project in the area which may affect the preservation of cultural property, they must get an agreement of the cultural property preservation guidance agency.

Article 38. (Prohibition of sale or trafficking of historical remains)

Historical remainss shall not be put on sale or trafficked out of the country.
An institution which plans to ship historical property out of the country for the purpose of exhibition must get a permission of the Cabinet.

Article 39. (Permanent preservation of blueprints and/or photographs of cultural property)

Cultural property preservation agencies and other relevant bodies shall prepare documentation such as blueprints and/or photographs of the cultural property belonging to the category of National Treasure for their permanent preservation.

Chapter 5. RESTORATION OF CULTURAL PROPERTY

Article 40. (Rehabilitation and restoration of typical cultural property)

Restoration of cultural property is an important endeavor to reproduce the relics that have been damaged or disappeared.

Cultural property preservation guidance agencies and local power organs shall rehabilitate and restore the typical cultural monuments, which represent different times of history, are of educational value and illustrate the excellence of national culture.

Article 41. (Layout of historical ruins)

Cultural property preservation guidance agencies and other relevant bodies shall draw up the layouts of historical ruins to be restored taking into full account of both the historical facts and the specific features of the given period of history, on the basis of scientifically proved information.

The layouts of historical ruins which are of national importance shall be approved by the Cabinet.

Article 42. (Preparation of restoration blueprints of historical ruins)

Preparation of blueprints of historical ruins shall be undertaken by relevant designing institutions.

The institutions authorized with preparation of blueprints shall draw restoration blueprints of historical ruins on the basis of approved technical specifications.

Restoration blueprints of historical ruins shall be approved by the central cultural property preservation guidance agency.

Article 43. (Planning of restoration of historical ruins)

The State planning organ shall integrate the restoration of important historical ruins into the master plan for state construction.

Article 44. (Quality and building inspection)

Cultural property preservation guidance agencies, relevant builders, organs, enterprises and
organizations shall ensure the quality of restoration of historical sites to meet the requirement of the approved blueprints.

Those projects on completion are subject to the building inspection of the state building inspection organ and central cultural property preservation guidance agency.

Article 45. (Moving of historical sites)

Historical sites shall not be moved to other places without permission.

The organs, enterprises or organizations which plan to move historical sites to other places because of inevitable reasons should get an agreement with the central cultural property preservation guidance agency and a permission of the Cabinet prior to taking any action.

Article 46. (Restoration of historical remains)

Non-existing historical remains may be restored to their original state referring to the scientifically proved data. The historical relics shall be restored to their original state only by those institutions which are duly authorized by the central cultural property preservation guidance agency.

Chapter 6. GUIDANCE AND CONTROL OF CULTURAL PROPERTY PROTECTION

Article 47. (Strengthening of guidance and control of cultural property)

It is a major guarantee for executing properly the policy of protection of cultural property to strengthen the control and guidance to it.

The state shall establish a system of unified guidance to protection of cultural property and strengthen control and guidance over it.

Article 48. (Unified guidance to protection of cultural property)

The central cultural property preservation guidance agency shall ensure unified guidance to protection of cultural property under the leadership of the Cabinet.

The central cultural property preservation guidance agency shall put under control and guide protection and management of nationwide cultural properties, on a normal basis.

Article 49. (Assignment of responsibility of the preservation and management of cultural property)

Cultural property preservation guidance agencies, local power organs and other relevant bodies shall assign responsibility of the preservation and management of cultural property to the local state organs and other interest groups in the areas under their jurisdiction, integrate cultural property protection plans into the local development plans and implement them without fail.
Article 50. (Construction of museums, plazas for historical education, folk parks and Folk villages)

The central cultural property preservation guidance agency and other relevant institutions may open museums or plazas for historical education in the areas with cultural relics concentrated. When necessary, they may also build in such areas folk parks or villages which preserve and vividly demonstrate the traditional lifestyle of our people.

Opening of such museums, plaza for historical education, folk parks and folk villages shall be approved by the Cabinet.

Article 51. (Provision of conditions for protection of cultural property)

The State planning organ, financial institutions and banks, relevant agencies, enterprises and organizations shall fully provide labor forces, equipment, materials and fund necessary for the protection of cultural property.

The manpower and financial resources, equipment and materials allocated for protection of cultural property shall not be used for other purposes.

Article 52. (Provision of conditions for scientific researches and introduction of research results)

The Cabinet and other relevant institutions shall establish solid scientific research bases for protection of cultural property and provide favorable conditions for research work.

Scientific research institutions concerned and cultural property preservation agencies shall actively introduce the successes and experiences gained in their research work into the cultural property protection and management.

Article 53. (Education through cultural property)

Cultural property preservation agencies, local power organs, and other relevant institutions should endeavor to promote, through the cultural property, education of people from all walks of life including young students so that they love and take good care of it with a higher sense of national pride and confidence on the basis of clear understanding of the time-honored history and homogeneity of the nation as well as its brilliant cultural tradition.

The mass media and other relevant bodies shall widely introduce and propagate the country’s cultural property through planned coverage of it.

Article 54. (Month of Love-Cultural Property)

The State shall institute April and November as Months of Love-Cultural Property.

Local power organs, institutions, enterprises, organizations and citizens should organize the work of preservation and management of cultural property in these months.
Article 55. (Organizing and operation of committee for preservation of historical remains and relics)

The State shall establish the non-standing State Committee for Preservation of Historical Remains and Relics and the similar committees in the provincial (city under direct jurisdiction), city (district) and county people's committees in order to implement the policy of protection of cultural property to the letter.

The State Committee for Preservation of Historical Remains and Relics and the similar committees of all echelons shall discuss the implementation of the State policy and law regarding the protection of cultural property and take appropriate measures.

Business arrangement of the State Committee for Preservation of Historical Remains and Relics is in the charge of the central cultural property preservation guidance agency and that of the similar committees of lower echelons the relevant cultural property preservation guidance agency.

Article 56. (Supervision and control over protection of cultural property)

Protection of cultural property shall be supervised and controlled by cultural property supervisory organs and other relevant agencies with supervision authority. The cultural property supervisory organs and other relevant agencies with supervision authority should supervise and control the protection and management of cultural property on a normal basis.

Article 57. (Restoration to original state or compensation)

Those who incurred damage or loss of cultural property shall be required to restore it, or to compensate for the damage or the loss.

Article 58. (Administrative responsibility)

The persons of organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens to blame shall be subject to appropriate punishment according to the extent in the following cases:

1. Having excavated the cultural property without permission,
2. Having disturbed the protection of cultural property by avoiding removing a dwelling house or structure in the reserves or arranging a project in an area that may badly affect the protection of cultural property without an agreement with the central property preservation guidance agency.
3. Having damaged or stole the cultural property and its protective facility,
4. Having engaged in trade or brokerage of cultural property,
5. Having exported cultural property to other countries without permission,
6. Having been keeping the historical relics found instead of presenting
7. Having conducted an act referred to the Article 29.
Article 59. (Penal responsibility)

In case that any act mentioned in the Article 58 come to an offense the responsible persons of institutions, enterprises and organizations and individual citizens shall be subject to penalty according to the appropriate provisions of the criminal law.
Chapter 1. The land of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea is a precious gain of the revolution

... Article 5. The State shall organize and carry out on a long-term basis the work of land conservation, land development and other projects for transforming the land and harnessing nature, according to the master plan for land development.

... Article 7. The State shall classify the land according to its uses as agricultural land, inhabited land, woodland, industrial land, aquatic land and special land and manage them accordingly. Supervision and control of the administration and exploitation of land shall be exercised on a coordinated basis by the land administration offices under the guidance of the Cabinet and local government organs.

... Chapter 2. Land ownership

... Article 9. In the Democratic People's Republic of Korea the land belongs to the State and to cooperative organizations. All land in the country is the common property of the people, and cannot be sold, bought or appropriated.

Chapter 3. The master plan for land development

...
Article 14. The master plan for land development is a coordinated, comprehensive, long-term program for properly developing, using, realigning and enhancing the beauty of the land in accordance with the aims of advancing the national economy and promoting the well-being of the people and for managing the economic life of the nation as a whole on a long-term basis and in a planned way. The State shall draw up and carry out an ambitious and dynamic master plan for land development to make the country prosperous and to raise the standard of living of the people.

...

Article 17. The master plan for land development shall include:

...

7. The location and size of towns, villages, recreation centres and sanatoria, and measures to preserve beauty spots, natural monuments, cultural relics and remains;

...

Article 18. The master plan for nationwide land development and the master plan for land development for important areas shall be approved by the Supreme People’s Assembly or its Standing Committee and the master plan for regional land development by the provincial people’s assembly or the provincial people’s committee.

Chapter 4. LAND CONSERVATION

...

Article 25. The land administration offices shall set up conservation areas where necessary, in order to protect the rivers, lakes, reservoirs, dykes and other structures. In these areas such acts as damaging river dykes and other structures or hindering their conservation and management are prohibited.

Article 26. It is prohibited to let untreated sewage flow into rivers, lakes and reservoirs, or to empty uncleansed toxic materials and dirt into them.

...

Article 32. The land administration offices shall mark out definite areas for the institutions, enterprises, schools and organizations to tend, in order to make the masses as a whole responsible for forestation and forest conservation work. The institutions, enterprises, schools, organizations and citizens should take an active part in spring and autumn tree planting, conserve the forests properly and take good care of them
and turn the mountains throughout the country into a paradise of greenery.

Chapter 5. LAND DEVELOPMENT

Article 57. All the roads in the country should be paved with cement, asphalt or stone to strengthen their surface; the technical condition of all roads should be constantly improved; and the safety and speed of the traffic and the modernity of the roads should be ensured.

Article 58. The road administration offices should put up good warning, indication, prohibition, mileage and other road signs, plant fruit trees and strong, fast-growing useful trees, lay out green verges and flower beds and set up resting places along the road sides, thereby keeping the roads in good order.

Article 60. The organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens are prohibited from taking any measure that is liable to hinder the protection and management of roads such as damaging the roads and their structures and installations or cutting down roadside trees without prior permission.

Chapter 6. LAND ADMINISTRATION

Article 64. Agricultural land comprises only arable land. Agricultural land shall be managed by the agricultural guidance institutions and by the cooperative farms, organs, enterprises and organizations that use it.

Article 69. Inhabited land comprises built-up areas in cities, county towns and worker’s settlements and the adjacent land for public use, and built-up areas in the countryside. Inhabited land shall be managed by the central city management office and the local administrative committees. When an organ, an enterprise or an organization wishes to use inhabited land, it should obtain the permission from the relevant provincial people’s committee or from the Cabinet.

Article 71. The land administration offices should exercise supervision and control to prevent the organs, enterprise, organizations and citizens from felling trees without due attention or
burning down forests to create fields.

... 

Article 75. Special land comprises the land used for special purposes, such as old revolutionary battle sites, places associated with the revolutionary history of the country, places of cultural interest, reserves, and land for military use.

Special land shall be administered by the central organ concerned, local administrative committees and the organs, enterprises and army units using it.

...

Article 77. The land administration offices should assume coordinated control over all the land in the country and register, and exercise supervision and control so that the order established may be strictly maintained in the administration and use of land and so that land may be used in a far-sighted way according to the master plan for land development.
Appendices

III

THE LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA
ON ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

(Extracts)

Adopted as the Ordinance No. 5 of the Supreme People’s Assembly of the DPR Korea
(April 9, 1986)

Chapter 1. THE FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES OF ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

...

Chapter 2. THE PRESERVATION AND IMPROVEMENT OF THE NATURAL ENVIRONMENT

...

Article 11. (Establishment of natural reserves and special reserves)

Natural reserves and special reserves including those for natural beauty, fauna and flora and marine resources shall be established by the State in order to preserve the natural environment.

The Cabinet shall be responsible for this.

Article 12. (Measures for the environmental protection)

Land management organs and relevant organs shall systematically investigate and record changes in the natural environment, such as those evident among animals and plants, those in the configuration of the ground and those in climate in these reserves and special reserves and take any necessary steps for their protection and management.

In the natural reserves and special reserves no act that is harmful to the preservation of the natural environment in its original state and to its thorough protection and management shall be permitted.

Article 13. (Protection of sceneries)

Institutions, enterprises, organizations and citizens shall refrain from cutting down ornamental trees in and around cities and villages, along highways and railways and on the banks of lakes and rivers, and from damaging or destroying the scenery, such as beauty spots, pine groves on beaches, swimming beaches, peculiar rocks and cliffs, attractive and impressive physical features in mountainous areas and picturesque islands.
Article 14. (Protection of natural monuments and spots of scenic beauty and historical interests)

Institutions, enterprises, organizations and citizens shall refrain from developing coal and ore mines in scenic spots, tourist resorts and holiday centres and from constructing buildings and facilities which impede the protection of the environment, and shall preserve caves, waterfalls, the remains of old castles, natural monuments, as well as spots of scenic beauty and of historical interests, in their original state.

Chapter 3. THE PREVENTION OF ENVIRONMENTAL POLLUTION

Article 19. (Compliance with the permitted limits for environmental protection)

Preventing environmental pollution is a prerequisite for preventing damage to the environment.

All institutions, enterprises and organizations shall comply strictly with the permitted limits for the protection of the environment, the pollutant emission standards and noise and vibration standards, set by the State.

These limits and standards shall be fixed by the Cabinet.

Article 36. (Measuring of the quantities and densities of harmful substances and intensity of noise and vibration)

Institutions, enterprises and organizations shall regularly measure quantities and densities of harmful substances emitted during production, as well as the intensity of noise and vibration, reduce them systematically and obtain approved limits from the environmental protection and control agencies concerned.

Harmful substances that exceed the permitted limit or are prohibited by the environmental protection and control agencies shall not be produced.

Chapter 4. THE GUIDANCE AND CONTROL OF ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Article 47. (Compensation for the harm to health and property)

Institutions, enterprises, organizations and citizens that have harmed the people's health and the property of the State, social cooperative organizations and citizens by destroying the environment shall compensate for the loss.
Article 50. (Administrative and penal responsibility)

In cases where institutions, enterprises, organizations violate this law to bring about grave consequences, their officials or the persons to blame shall be called to account administratively or penally.
IV

THE LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA
ON CITY MANAGEMENT

(Extracts)

Adopted as the Decision No. 14 at the Standing Committee of the Supreme People’s Assembly
of the DPR Korea (February 29, 1992)

Revised and complemented several times later

Chapter 1.  FUNDAMENTALS OF CITY MANAGEMENT

... 

Article 3.  (Principle of protection and use of buildings and facilities)

The buildings and facilities of the DPRK are the precious assets built by the sweat of the brow of its people.

The State shall ensure that their lifespan are increased and they are put into effective use through improvement of their protection and management.

...

Chapter 2.  MANAGEMENT OF BUILDINGS

...

Chapter 3.  MANAGEMENT OF WATERWORKS AND HEATING FACILITIES

...

Chapter 4.  IMPROVEMENT OF CITY ROADS AND RIVERS

...

Article 31.  (Planned maintenance of city roads and rivers)

Maintenance of city roads and rivers is a key criterion to the cultural development of cities.

City management institutions, relevant institutions, enterprises and organizations shall take stock of the maintenance of city roads and rivers, and improve them in a planned way.
Article 32. (Assignment of management of city roads and rivers)

City roads include motorways, lawns on the street, walkways, street lamps, bridges, tunnels, railroads, underpasses, zebra crossings, safety facilities for the protection of roads and signposts within the territory of a city, and city rivers include the rivers, streams, brooks and facilities for their protection within the territory of a city.

Management of city roads and rivers shall be undertaken by city management institutions. Management of exclusive roads and important rivers shall be undertaken by relevant institutions, enterprises and organizations.

Chapter 5. TREE AND FLOWER PLANTING

Article 40. (Management of parks and recreation grounds)

Local power organs and city management institutions shall lay out parks and recreation grounds of various sizes in different parts of cities and villages, maintain and operate them regularly.

Article 44. (Management of green areas)

Institutions, enterprises, organizations and citizens shall not pick flowers, cut trees or damage facilities in the green areas.

Cutting trees and digging turfs in the green area without approval of the relevant organs shall be prohibited.

Chapter 6. CITY BEAUTIFICATION

Article 51. (Prevention of hazardous gas and dust)

The enterprises that generate hazardous gas and dust in the processes of production shall equip themselves with gas and dust removing facilities and operate them regularly so as not to emit hazardous gas and dust into the residential areas.

Vehicles that emit exhaust gas above the limit shall not be operated, and tree leaves and other substances that emit smoke shall not be burned in the central part of city.
Chapter 7. GUIDANCE OF CITY MANAGEMENT

... 

Article 55. (Duty of central city management institution)

The guidance to city management shall be provided by the central city management institution under the unified guidance of the Cabinet. The central city management institution shall get acquainted with and give guidance to city management across the country on a normal basis.
V

FOREST LAW OF THE DEMOCRATIC PEOPLE’S REPUBLIC OF KOREA

(Extracts)

Adopted as the Ordinance No.9 of the Supreme People’s Assembly (December 11, 1992)

Revised and complemented several times later

Chapter 1. FUNDAMENTALS OF THE FOREST LAW

Article 1. (Mission of the Forest Law)

Forest Law of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea contributes to the implementation of the forest policy of the State by establishing strict rules and order in forest creation and protection and the use of forest resources.

... 

Article 5. (Principle forestation)

It is the consistent policy of the State to conduct forest planting and seeding on a mass scale.

The State shall encourage all the people to actively participate in afforestation and all the relevant enterprises enhance their role in order to make the whole country a forest and garden.

...

Article 7. (Principle of using forest resources)

The State shall establish a correct order of using forest resources so as to use them in a synthetic and reasonable way.

...

Chapter 2. AFFORESTATION

Article 10. (Farsighted forestation)

Forestation is an important work for the prosperity of the country.

Land management organs and other organs, enterprises and organizations in charge of forests or reforestation areas should endeavor to combine properly trees of good species such as Changsong
larches and evergreens to steadily increase forest areas and improve forest scenery. They also should execute reforestation in a farsighted way so as to improve the economic effectiveness of forests and increase forest accumulation per unit.

Chapter 3. FOREST PROTECTION

Article 21. (Permission for forest entrance or making of fire)

If organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens want to enter the forest areas or to set fire in and around the forest areas for the purpose of using the forestland or of exploiting forest resources, they or he/she should get permission from the land management organs.

Without permission, no one can carry things liable to catch fire or cause ignition in the forest areas.

Article 25. (Construction, lumbering and extraction in forest areas)

Organs, enterprises, organizations and citizens should refrain from erecting buildings, structures or highways in forest areas, or digging and cutting down trees or clearing forest, digging up stones or soil without due permission.

Article 26. (Projects for erosion control and torrential improvement)

Land management organs and other relevant organs, enterprises and organizations shall conduct projects for the erosion control and torrential improvement in a planned way and regularly repair the facilities concerned so as to protect forests from the natural disasters such as torrential rains or landslides.

Chapter 4. EXPLOITATION OF FOREST RESOURCES

Article 30. (Permission of use of forestland)

Permission of use of forestland shall be given by the Cabinet or by the land management organs concerned.

The Cabinet or the relevant land management organs should take into full account the purpose for and scale of use of forestlands in question before issuing permissions to it.
Chapter 5. GUIDANCE AND CONTROL ON THE FOREST ADMINISTRATION

... 

Article 44. (Supervision and control on the forest management)

Supervision and control on forest administration are executed by the land management organs and other relevant supervisory and control agencies.

The land management organs and other relevant supervisory and control agencies should fulfill their duty so as to create forest on the principle of replacing one tree with ten, prevent damages from fire, blights and harmful insects, landslides, or reckless clearing for cultivation and deforestation and comply to the letter with the regulations in exploiting forest resources such as the use of forestland, lumbering and consumption of timbers

...

Article 47. (Administrative and penal responsibility)

In cases where grave consequences are resulted from violating the regulations for protection and exploitation of the forest resources such as failing to perform assigned tree-planting plans or to ensure the proper rate of rooting, or reckless deforestation, exploitation and export, or causing forest fire, the officials or persons of the institutions, enterprises and organizations to blame shall be called to administrative or penal punishment according to the damage(s) done.
Appendix 2: Government Organs Related to the Management of the Property

1. Ministry of Agriculture
2. Bureau of Tourism
3. Ministry of Land and Environmental Conservation
4. NBCPC
5. Ministry of Urban Management
6. Ministry of State Construction Control
7. Ministry of Finance
8. Rural Economy Committee of Hwanghae Province
9. People’s Committee of North Hwanghae Province
10. People’s Committee of Kaesong City
11. Cultural Preservation Department
12. Management Bureau for Land and Environmental Conservation
14. Section of Construction Control
15. Finance Bureau
16. Kaesong Cooperative Farm Management Committee
17. Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon
18. Management Office for Kaesong Cultural Property
19. Site managers
20. Institutions authorized with public management

Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
Appendix 3: Structure of Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee
Appendix 4: Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Trayastrimsa Heaven (Thirty-three Heaven)</em></td>
<td>Heaven of the Thirty-Three Gods, second of the six heavens of the world of desire in Buddhism.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anhwa Gate</td>
<td>Though different in name, it is guessed to be identical with the Taehwa Gate of the Imperial Wall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Travels of Marco Polo</em></td>
<td>Book in the form of a travelogue written by Lusdeigero after listening to Marco Polo’s impression of the East.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buddhism</td>
<td>A religion and philosophical system of central and eastern Asia, founded in India in the 6th century BC by Buddha; came to Korea through China in 372.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changan</td>
<td>Xi an in China had been called Changan for a long time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chimjon</td>
<td>Palace for king’s bedroom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Chok</em></td>
<td>Measuring unit used in the old East. One chok corresponds to 30 cm today.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confucianism</td>
<td>Ethical teaching founded in China in the 5th century BC; came to Korea during the Koguryo dynasty (late 4th century).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hubaekje</td>
<td>A state that occupied some parts of the southwest of the Korean Peninsula between 900 and 936.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyanggyo</td>
<td>Educational institution that provided Confucian education to the children of officials in villages during the Koryo and Ri dynasties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyangsil</td>
<td>Structure for storing incense.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J aan (Pukchang) Gate</td>
<td>Though different in name, it is believed to be identical with Konhwa Gate of the Imperial Wall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jongjon</td>
<td>Palace for king’s affairs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jongyong House</td>
<td>Structure for storing Confucian scriptures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jusan</td>
<td>Typical mountain, which, according to the theory of geomancy, incarnates the luck of an area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koguryo</td>
<td>A state in the north Korean Peninsula and northeast China from 277 BC to AD 668.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koryosa</td>
<td>Book that describes the history of Koryo in detail. It came off the press in 1451, in the early days of the Ri dynasty, successor to Koryo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kukhak</td>
<td>Highest institution of learning built and run by the state for educating national officials. It corresponds to a present-day national university.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kukjagam</td>
<td>National educational institution of Koryo built in 992, and predecessor of Songgyungwan. It was first situated near the Hoebin Gate in the southern part of Kaesong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kyongji Observatory</strong></td>
<td>Kyongji was the capital of Silla (57 BC – AD 935), and Chomsongdae was built there in the first half of the 7th century BC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lantern festival</strong></td>
<td>Buddhist ceremony held to pray for the blessing of Buddha with lanterns lit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Manwoldae</strong></td>
<td>The name was originated in the Ri Dynasty; seen from the royal palace, Koryo looked like the full moon. Later it indicated the site of the royal palace itself.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Metaphysics</strong></td>
<td>Objective idealistic philosophy originated in North Song of China in the 11th – 12th century. It supported Confucianism theoretically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neiyuan</strong></td>
<td>Flower garden in royal palace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>North Song</strong></td>
<td>A state in China from 960 to 1126.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Paekje</strong></td>
<td>A state in the southwest of the Korean Peninsula from 3rd century BC to 660.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pang-Ri system</strong></td>
<td>Urban system began during the Tang dynasty of China. The city was divided regularly in a chequered pattern with five main bu (districts), many pang in every bu and many ri in every pang, which were administrative units for running the city and controlling the citizens. Inside the walls of Changan, the capital of Tang, every pang and ri were surrounded by walls and could be entered only through gates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phalgwanhoe</strong></td>
<td>Buddhist ceremony held in royal palace along with playing, singing and dancing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phyochung</strong></td>
<td>Phyochung means singing the praises of loyalty and integrity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Phyonjon</strong></td>
<td>Palace for king’s daily life.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Posthumous name</strong></td>
<td>Title given to a king posthumously.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ri dynasty</strong></td>
<td>A state from 1392-1905 after the ruin of Koryo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sejagung</strong></td>
<td>Palace where Crown Prince lived. It was also called Shuchunggung.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Silla</strong></td>
<td>A state in the south of the Korean Peninsula from 57 BC to 935.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sowon</strong></td>
<td>Private school run by knowledgeable scholars to provide Confucian education.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Taosim</strong></td>
<td>A religion and philosophy founded in China in the late 2nd century. Came to Korea in the 7th century and disappeared during the days of the Ri Dynasty (1392-1905).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>T haebong</strong></td>
<td>A small state in the central part of the Korean Peninsula from 901 to 918.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The principles of Yin-Yang 5 Natural Elements</strong></td>
<td>Philosophy on interaction of Yin and Yang, and the five Natural Elements – water, wood, metal, fire and earth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>T-shaped shrine</strong></td>
<td>Shrine with T-shaped ground plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Upbi (crying monument)</strong></td>
<td>Up means weeping. It is said that this monument has been wet all the time. People gave it this name to indicate that it was weeping for Jong Mong Ju’s death.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Yuan dynasty</strong></td>
<td>Dynasty established by the Mongols in the vast territory of Mongolia and China; from 1206 to 1388.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix 5: Chronological Table of the History of Kaesong

Table 13: Chronological Table of the History of Kaesong

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Period</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Historical Events</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Koguryo (BC 277–AD 668)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Kaesong was called Tongbihol and Pusogap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Later Silla (676–935)</td>
<td>757</td>
<td>Kaesong was renamed Kaesong County and Songak County</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Period of Later Three States (892–936)</td>
<td>896</td>
<td>Wang K on became the castellan after building the Palocham Wall in Kaesong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>898–905</td>
<td>Kaesong became the capital of the Thaebong State (901–918)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>905</td>
<td>Thaebong moved its capital to Cholwon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>918</td>
<td>Wang K on founded Koryo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>919</td>
<td>Kaesong became the capital of Koryo. Palace Wall, Imperial Wall, palace buildings and 10 temples were built. Five bu (districts) were established in the capital.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>943</td>
<td>Construction of the Mausoleum of King Wang K on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>960</td>
<td>Declaration of Kaesong as the Imperial Capital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>987</td>
<td>Establishment of Pang-Ri system (ancient town- dividing system) in Kaesong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>992</td>
<td>Foundation of Kukjagam, the highest educational institution in Koryo in the present Naesong-dong area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1009–1029</td>
<td>Construction of the 23km-long Outer Wall encompassing the whole city as advised by Kang Gam Chan, a famous general in Koryo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1011</td>
<td>Destruction of Manwoldae royal palace by the invasion of Kitan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1011–1014</td>
<td>Reconstruction of Manwoldae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>Manufacturing of the wood blocks for the Koryo Tripitaka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1047–1083</td>
<td>Consolidating of the Pang-Ri system by establishing 35 bang and 344 ri in 5 bu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1089</td>
<td>Kukjagam was moved to Sunchon House</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1126</td>
<td>Destruction of Manwoldae by the rebellion of Ri Ja Gyom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1132–1138</td>
<td>Reconstruction of Manwoldae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1171</td>
<td>Damage of Manwoldae by fire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1208</td>
<td>Extension of the market street from the present Namdae Gate to the Kwanghwa Gate, the east gate of Imperial Wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1223</td>
<td>Repair of the Outer Wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1232–1270</td>
<td>Move the capital to the Kanghwa Island due to the invasion of the Mongolians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1304</td>
<td>Construction of Taesong Hall in Kukjagam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1308</td>
<td>Rename of Kukjagam into Songgyungwan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1349</td>
<td>Construction of Mong Tomb for the 29th King Chumgok of Koryo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1358</td>
<td>Repair of the Outer Wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1361</td>
<td>Destruction of Manwoldae by Hongtou’s invasion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### APPENDICES

**MANAGEMENT PLAN**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Period</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Historical Events</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1365–1372</td>
<td>Construction of the Mausoleum of King Kongmin, the 31st king of Koryo and the Kwangthongbojeson Temple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1367</td>
<td>Reconstruction of Songgyungwan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1378</td>
<td>Repair of the Outer Wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1391</td>
<td>Start of the construction of the Inner Wall initiated by Choe Yong, a famous general of Koryo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1392</td>
<td>Murder of Jong Mong Ju, a loyal subject of Koryo, on Sonjuk Bridge. Koryo was replaced with the Ri dynasty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1393</td>
<td>Completion of the Inner Wall. Construction of the Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1394</td>
<td>Ri dynasty moved its capital from Kaesong to Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1395</td>
<td>Ri dynasty downgraded Kaesong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1399</td>
<td>Transfer of the capital to Kaesong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1405</td>
<td>Transfer of the capital back to Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1438</td>
<td>Revise the grade of Kaesong into prefecture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1440</td>
<td>Dividing of Kaesong in a four bu - four pang system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1573</td>
<td>Converting of the house of Jong Mong Ju into sowon. It was bestowed the title, Sungyang Sowon, by the Ri dynasty in 1575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1592</td>
<td>Destruction of Songgyungwan by the Japanese invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1602–1610</td>
<td>Reconstruction of Songgyungwan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1641</td>
<td>Construction of the Monument to Jong Mong Ju near Sonjuk Bridge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1660–1674</td>
<td>Repair of the Mausoleum of King Wang Kon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1740</td>
<td>Construction of a Phyochung Monument near Sonjuk Bridge by the 21st King Yongjo of the Ri dynasty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1780</td>
<td>Construction of a shrine at the Mausoleum of King Wang K on. Setting up of railings on Sonjuk Bridge and a new bridge next to it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1872</td>
<td>Construction of a Phyochung Monument near Sonjuk Bridge by the 26th King Kojong of the Ri dynasty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1873</td>
<td>Repair of the Kaesong Walls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1899</td>
<td>Repair of the Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1906</td>
<td>Kaesong was downgraded into a county and with four sub-counties and 14 ri.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Period of Japanese colonial rule (1910–1945)</td>
<td></td>
<td>The royal tombs in Kaesong suffered clandestine excavations by the Japanese. The belfry near the Kaesong Namdae Gate was damaged and the gate platform was modified. The main gate of Sungyang Sowon was changed into a triple gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1950</td>
<td>The gate pavilion of Kaesong Namdae Gate and the Kwandok Pavilion were destroyed by a merican bombing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1952</td>
<td>Kaesong was placed directly under the central authority and Kangphung, Phanmun and Jangphung counties were annexed to it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1954</td>
<td>Restore the Kwandok Pavilion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1955</td>
<td>Restore the Kaesong Namdae Gate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1988</td>
<td>Koryo Songgyungwan was turned into the Koryo Museum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1994</td>
<td>Reconstruction of the Mausoleum of King Wang K on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2003</td>
<td>Kaesong City belonged to North Hwanghae Province</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea**
### Appendix 6: Bibliography

#### Table 14: Bibliography (in chronological order)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>№</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Writer</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Publisher</th>
<th>Place of Publication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Sonhwabongsakoryodogyong</td>
<td>So Gung</td>
<td>1124</td>
<td>Kunthaek Bookshop</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Koryosa</td>
<td>Kim Jong So, Jong Rin Ji</td>
<td>1451</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Koryosa-jolyo</td>
<td>Kim Jong So, Jong Rin Ji</td>
<td>1452</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Sejongsillokijiri (True record of King Sejong)</td>
<td>Yun Hui</td>
<td>1454</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Sinjungdombokyoriesungnam</td>
<td>Ri Haeng</td>
<td>1530</td>
<td>Academy of Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Koryogodojing</td>
<td>Han Jae Ryom</td>
<td>1911</td>
<td>Korean Bibliopole Publishing House</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Junggyongji</td>
<td>Kim Don Ryom</td>
<td>1915</td>
<td>Korean Kwangmun Organ</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Kaesongji</td>
<td>Rim Bong Sik</td>
<td>1934</td>
<td>Kaesongji Compiling House</td>
<td>Kaesong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Jungbomunhonbigo</td>
<td>Pak Dae Yong</td>
<td>1908</td>
<td>Academy of Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Illustrated Book of Korean Historical Sites (Vol. 6)</td>
<td>Sekino Ikeutsi</td>
<td>1918</td>
<td>Oozuka Art Publishing House</td>
<td>Tokyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Illustrated Book of Korean Historical Sites (Vol. 7)</td>
<td>Sekino Ikeutsi</td>
<td>1920</td>
<td>Oozuka Art Publishing House</td>
<td>Tokyo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Koryowangrungji (Royal tombs in Koryo)</td>
<td>Kawaguchi</td>
<td>1927</td>
<td>Kaesong Library</td>
<td>Kaesong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Historical Sites in Songdo</td>
<td>Ko Yu Sob</td>
<td>1949</td>
<td>Ulyu Publishing House</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Taekli-ji</td>
<td>Ri Jung Hwan</td>
<td>1964</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>History Dictionary (Vols. 1 and 2)</td>
<td>Historical Institute of the Academy of Social Sciences</td>
<td>1971</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Geography Dictionary (Vol.1)</td>
<td>Geography Dictionary Writing Committee</td>
<td>1972</td>
<td>Kim Il Sung University Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>History and Science, (No. 1)</td>
<td>Pak Yong Hae</td>
<td>1976</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>History of Korean Culture</td>
<td>Mun Song Ryob</td>
<td>1977</td>
<td>Science and Encyclopedia Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>№</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Writer</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Publisher</td>
<td>Place of Publication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>General History of Korea (Vols. 6, 7 and 8)</td>
<td>Historical Institute of the Academy of Social Sciences</td>
<td>1979</td>
<td>Science and Encyclopedia Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>General History of Korea (Vols. 9, 10, 11 and 12)</td>
<td>Historical Institute of the Academy of Social Sciences</td>
<td>1980</td>
<td>Science and Encyclopedia Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>History and Science, (Nos. 2 and 3)</td>
<td>Jon Ryong Chol</td>
<td>1980</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Historical Relics in Korea</td>
<td>Institute for Cultural Conservation</td>
<td>1983</td>
<td>Science and Encyclopedia Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (Nos. 1, 2, 3 and 4)</td>
<td>Kaesong Excavation Team, Jang Sang Ryol</td>
<td>1986</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (No. 2)</td>
<td>Han In Ho</td>
<td>1987</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>History and Science (No. 1)</td>
<td>Wang Song Su</td>
<td>1989</td>
<td>Science and Encyclopedia Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (No. 1 and 3)</td>
<td>Jong Chan Yong, Jang Sang Ryol</td>
<td>1989</td>
<td>Science and Encyclopedia Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (No. 2)</td>
<td>Wang Song Su</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>Academy of Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Koryo Paintings</td>
<td>Ri Chol</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>Art Education Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (No. 2)</td>
<td>Ri Chang En</td>
<td>1991</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Illustrated Book of Ruins and Relics of Korea (Vol. 10)</td>
<td>Compilation Committee of the Illustrated Book of Ruins and Relics of Korea</td>
<td>1991</td>
<td>Foreign Languages Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Illustrated Book of Ruins and Relics of Korea (Vol. 11)</td>
<td>Compilation Committee of the Illustrated Book of Ruins and Relics of Korea</td>
<td>1992</td>
<td>Foreign Languages Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>№</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Writer</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td>Publisher</td>
<td>Place of Publication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Illustrated Book of Ruins and Relics of Korea (Vols. 14 and 15)</td>
<td>Compilation Committee of the Illustrated Book of Ruins and Relics of Korea</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>Foreign Languages Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (No. 4)</td>
<td>Om Yong Chan</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (No. 3)</td>
<td>Han In Ho</td>
<td>1994</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Illustrated Book of Ruins and Relics of Korea (Vol. 20)</td>
<td>Compilation Committee of the Illustrated Book of Ruins and Relics of Korea</td>
<td>1996</td>
<td>Foreign Languages Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Study on Kaegyong of the Koryo Era</td>
<td>Pak Yong Un</td>
<td>1996</td>
<td>Iiji Publishing House</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (No. 3)</td>
<td>Kim In Chol</td>
<td>1997</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (No. 3)</td>
<td>Ri Chang En</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (No. 2)</td>
<td>An Song Gyu</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology (No. 1)</td>
<td>Ri In Sok</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Following the old traces of Kaesong</td>
<td>Jon Ryong Chol</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Art and Literature Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Biographical Dictionary of Korean History</td>
<td>Historical Institute of the Academy of Social Sciences</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Science and Encyclopedia Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Kaegyong, the imperial capital of Koryo</td>
<td>Kang Ho Son</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Creation and Criticism Publishing House</td>
<td>Seoul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Study on Korean Archaeology, No. 1</td>
<td>Ri Chang On, Kim In Chol</td>
<td>2003</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>Study on Koryo Sites</td>
<td>Ri Chang On</td>
<td>2003</td>
<td>Social Sciences Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Chronological Table of the Korean History</td>
<td>Historical Institute of the Academy of Social Sciences</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>Science and Encyclopedia Publishing House</td>
<td>Pyongyang</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Kaesong, the capital of the first unified state in Korea
Pyongyang, Democratic People's Republic of Korea
1) **Identification/boundaries**

*Could the State Party clarify how the boundaries of the individual nominated property components were established?*

The following factors have been considered in the core zone boundary delineation:

1. To include all key components relating to the values of the nominated property
2. To ensure sufficient protection of all the key components
3. To include all related cultural and natural elements in the immediate vicinity of the key components
4. To follow, where applicable, existing natural or manmade features such as rivers/streams, ridgelines, roads, property boundary, etc.

Specific reasons of boundary delineation for each nominated property components are as follows:

**Manwoldae & Kaesong Chomsongdae**

The core area of Manwoldae and Kaesong Chomsongdae includes the already identified heritage components and areas of archaeological interest. The area is bordered in the south and west by a road along the Kwangmyong stream and the outer parts are residential areas. In the north, it is bordered by the road behind Manwoldae and the outer part is forest area of Mt Songak. In the east, it is bordered by Joam stream and the outer part contains several areas occupied and managed by industrial College, Factory of Jewelry and Ginseng Processing Factory.

**Kaesong Walls**

The core zone has been defined as 5 meter wide area along both sides of the existing walls in compliance with the Regulation (amended in 1994) for the implementation of the Law of the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea on Protection of Cultural Property.

A building that protrudes into the core zone at a part of the Inner Wall was constructed before 1990 (i.e. before the amendment of the above mentioned regulation), and the boundary of this affected core zone is delineated along the protruding part of this building.

**Kaesong Namdae Gate**

The boundary of its core zone is defined along the ring road and the surrounding outer part is residential area. The Southern outer part is managed by the Park Management Office.

**Sungyang Sowon**

The boundary of its core zone is defined along the lane facing Mt Janam in the north, east and west. The outer part along the lane is managed by the Park Management Office. The boundary is defined in the south along a fence between the property and the outer part consisting of residential area and area of Kaesong Cultural House. Both areas (i.e. the residential area and the area of Kaesong Cultural House) have not been included as reconstruction or repair is expected to be carried out there.

**Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments**
The boundary of its core zone is defined in the west along the eastern fence of the Kaesong Fine Arts Studio and other lanes. This boundary cannot be extended to include the school as the area is being used proprietarily for school activities. The south western middle part boundary runs along an adjacent restaurant. The boundary could not be extended to include the open space of the Sonjuk secondary school because it is being used by students for extracurricular and sports activities.

The upper western and northern boundary is facing an open space that is part of Janamsan Hotel. This open space is proprietary to the hotel and is being used as a park and green space and it has no attributes associated with the history of Jong Mong Ju. The boundary on the eastern part runs along the embankment and has not been extended to include the bigger stream as that area is not related to the history of Jong Mong Ju.

Koryo Songgyunkwan

Its core area boundary is defined in the north along a road. It cannot extend further to the north as northern outer part is the Martyrs’ Cemetery. It is bordering a lane in the west and a parking lot in the south as south western outer part is the area of the “Koryo Songgyunkwan” university.

In the east it is bordering a road leading to the Ryongthong Valley. The outer eastern part forms farm land.

Mausoleum of King Wang Kon, Seven Tombs Cluster and Myongrung Cluster

The Mausoleum of King Wang Kon, Seven Tombs Cluster and Myongrung Cluster are situated in one core area zone that encompass the Fengshui Mountains related to the sites. The core zone is defined along lanes in valleys and on ridge of Mt Mansu in the north and west. The outer part of the northern and western area is forest areas. It is bordering in the east the lanes beside an adjacent expressway and beyond the lanes is the protection area of the expressway. It is bordering in the south and southeast a road (running from Myongrung-dong to Haeson-ri) on the mountain foot. The outer residential area to the south is not included as the houses are expected to go through reconstructions in future. The traditional Korean style architecture will be respected in reconstruction. The outer part area to the south is farming land.

Mausoleum of King Kongmin

The boundary of the core zone is bordering a lane on the mountain ridge in the north and west and a small valley extending from the north of the mausoleum to the east to ensure and preserve the visual integrity in terms of geomantic relationship between the site and the historical landscape and also in terms of any negative impact from outside; it is enclosing the Acha peak in the south in order to encompass the historical landscape of the mausoleum, whereas the southern part of the peak has not been included because these areas are being used for agriculture.

2) Justification

We note that the revised nomination has deleted two of the sites some distance to the north that were previously included in the nominated property to concentrate on an ensemble of monuments and sites at Kaesong that represent the ruling base of the Koryo with their associated tombs. We note that this is so as to demonstrate the political,
cultural philosophical and spiritual values of the capital of the first unified Korean state, through the geomantic layout of the city and tomb complexes, the urban defense system of walls and gates, and educational institutions related to Confucianism, Buddhism and Taoism. It is argued that the Koryo period from the 10th to the 14th centuries was the culmination of developments in earlier periods and formed the basis of Korean cultural identity, which in turn, made significant contribution to cultural development in Far East Asia. Could the State Party clarify the nature of this contribution to cultural development in Far East Asia?

First, the nature of the contribution to the cultural development in Far East Asia lies in that it represents an exceptional example of city planning and defense system of adapting to the existing topographical and geomantic conditions.

It was a common feature among Asian countries including Korea, China, Japan and Vietnam to site the capitals according to geomantic principles.

However, examples of laying out capital defense walls connecting the natural surrounding geomantic mountains and thereby resulting in an irregular shape, can only be found few, including Kaesong of Koryo Dynasty (early 11th C), Seoul of Ri Dynasty (end 14th C), Nanjing of Ming Dynasty (end 14th C), Citadel of Ho Dynasty (end 14th C).

The walls of Kaesong are distinct from capital walls of other countries in terms of period (11th C), scale (Outer Wall: 23Km), masonry (using stones of various sizes), combination of stone walls and earthen walls and effective adaptation to topographical features.

Moreover, the planning of the city as well as the Royal Palace is characterized by free arrangement in accordance with the natural setting of geomancy. This is the first of this kind ever used as compared to other capital cities in East Asian countries of the previous and same period of Koryo Dynasty such as Pyongyang (Koguryo), Kyongju (Silla), Changan (Tang), Kaifeng (Northern Song), Nanjing (Ming), Beijing (Yuan and Ming)

Second, the nature of the contribution to the cultural development in Far East Asia lies in that the bustling trade during the Koryo period introduced its special commodities and thereby its culture to other countries.

According to the old records in the Koryosa (History of Koryo), the envoys from the Song Dynasty numbered approximately 4000 in 82 visits and the Japanese traders numbered approximately 300 in 9 visits between 1020 – 1100; hundreds of traders from Arabian peninsula visited to the Koryo Dynasty in 1024, 1025 and 1040 (three times).

The sea and land route trade were very frequent widely exporting and introducing its special products such as Koryo celadon, Koryo paper, ink, books, ginseng, silk, fan, gold and silver to the East Asian countries such as Song, Jurchen, Japan and as far as to the to Abbasid Dynasty in the Middle East. One of the main sea trading route ran from the Port of Pyokando, situated in the lower reaches of river Ryesong and near Kaesong, via the West Sea of Korea and through Dengzhou (登州) of Shandong peninsular of China to Kaifeng (开封). Another route ran from Jolla province of southern Korean peninsula via the West Sea of Korea through Mingzhou (明州) or Kangzhou (杭州) of China and through the Great Channel to Kaifeng.
With the decline of sea trade in the 13th century due to unstable political conditions of trading partners of Koryo, the land route became the main trading route.

It was through the Silk Road Trade routes that Arabian merchants brought knowledge about Koryo to India and the Middle East.

The special products of Koryo such as Koryo celadon and Koryo paper were considered “the most precious treasure in the world” in Asian countries like China and Japan. The Chinese historical book called 考槃余事 describes details of the superior paper of Koryo Dynasty. The Ming dynasty used the paper of Koryo Dynasty in binding the book called 元史 in 1369.

3) Comparative analysis

We note that the nominated property has been compared with a number of properties with similar features in Korea, China and Japan but has not considered Nanjing (the Ming capital), Jiangsu, China, or properties with similar features in Vietnam. Could the State Party comment on similarities between Kaesong and Nanjing, between properties with similar features in Vietnam, in particular the Citadel of the Ho Dynasty? Were late 14th C East Asian cities influenced by the Koryo through trading contacts via the port of Pyokrando? (This relates to Criterion (ii)re interchange of human values.)

Comparison with the Citadel of Ho Dynasty

The Citadel was built at the end of 14th century. It is situated in a basin with mountains on four sides and rivers in the east and west. The terrain of the basin slightly slopes down from the south to north. The layout of the Outer Wall was adapted to the topography connecting the surrounding hills thereby resulting in an irregular shape. The Outer Wall shows a geo-cultural landscape in which the natural settings and the principle of Fengshui are in harmony. At the same time, this goes also well with its function as a fortress.

The plan of the Inner Wall reveals the strong influence of Chinese Confucianism. Being square in shape and built on a flat platform it has four gates on four sides, one each on the center of each side, and particularly the south gate is considered the main gate and it is quite big with three vaulted gateways. The plan of the Royal Palace shows its main axis and symmetrical layout, whereas the main axis is turned slightly to the southeast and northwest. This is considered to be the result of adaptation to the specific local climate. The Citadel combines various construction techniques from East Asia, Southeast Asia and Vietnam. Other Southeast Asian civilizations (Laos, Cambodia and Indonesia) had pioneered the use of large stone blocks in their edifices. However, this was the first time that such huge stone blocks were used in Vietnam to construct the walls enclosing a royal citadel. This fact attests the great technical development in the citadel construction in the period of Ho Dynasty. In addition, the Chinese traditional techniques of earthen wall construction were adopted together with the East Asian traditional techniques of foundation construction.

Kaesong Walls and Ho Citadel have common characteristics in selecting the site in terms of geo-cultural landscape related with Fengshui. Both Outer Walls follow the topography of the valleys and surrounding mountain ridges in a similar way respecting not only geomantic principles but also their function as a defensive wall.
However, the plans of both royal palaces differ clearly from each other. The plan of Kaesong Royal Palace does not carry the conventional precise symmetry because more weight was given to Fengshui. In addition, the Kaesong Outer Wall differs from the Walls of the Citadel of Ho Dynasty in that stone and earthen walls were combined effectively taking advantage of the topography, and stones in various sizes were used for the construction. Furthermore the Kaesong Outer Wall dates back to early 11th century and the Citadel of Ho Dynasty dates back to end of 14th century, and they are different from each other in terms of historical period.

Comparison with Nanjing (Capital of Ming Dynasty)

Nanjing is a famous city in China with a long history and its representative city plans can be classified into two kinds according to their period: Northern-Southern Dynasties (420-589), early Ming Dynasty (1368-1441).

The city planning of Nanjing in early Ming period was such that the capital is surrounded by mountains on four sides and the Yangtze river flowing from North to South. The walls consist of 4 walls, namely Outer Wall, Yingtianfu Wall, Imperial Wall and Palace Wall.

The Outer Wall follows the topography and principles of geomancy connecting the surrounding mountains and thereby resulting in irregular shape different from the conventional square shape of other Chinese traditional capital walls. Within the Outer Wall, the Palace Wall and Imperial Wall are laid out to the east. There is Mt Zijin at the back (north) of the Palace Wall and Imperial Wall and there was a lake in front of Mt Zijin to the south, which was filled up with earth to expand the Palace and Imperial Walls.

The terrain of the northern part of Nanjing is lower than the southern part.

The residential area was established to the southwest of the Palace Wall and Imperial Wall within the Outer Wall.

The city planning of Nanjing has common characteristics with Kaesong, the capital of Koryo Dynasty, in terms of geo-cultural settings and Fengshui. Both cities were sited in a place surrounded by mountains on four sides. The Mt Zijin being the Jusan (主山) according to the principle of Fengshui, the lake to the south and in front of this mountain was filled up with earth to expand the Palace Wall and Imperial Wall. However, Kaesong is different from Nanjing in that its terrain of the Royal Palace site slopes slightly down from North to South and that more weight is given to the North. Also, the buildings of the Royal Palace were freely laid out respecting the original topography of the site. According to the plan of the Imperial Palace in Nanjing, the palace, based on monarchy centered Confucian outlook on value, was laid out in compliance with the conventional tradition of Chinese capitals, namely the buildings were laid out in a precise symmetry. This is clearly different from the Royal Palace in Kaesong because the plan of the Royal Palace in Kaesong gives more weight to the geomantic topography.

The Kaesong Walls are also different from that of Nanjing, not only in terms of combination of stone and earthen walls and use of stones in various sizes, but also in terms of the historical period.

14th century influence
Pyokrando, a port situated in the lower reaches of Ryesong river, was the entrance to Kaesong (capital of Koryo Dynasty), which was a famous trading port that greatly flourished in the 11-12 centuries.

In that period the 30-ri (12km) road from Kaesong to Pyokrando was a busy trading route bustling with traders and goods. However, from the 13th century the significance of Pyokrando as a trading port declined due to unstable political situation of trading partners of Koryo. And, consequently, overland routes were used widely by many traders and foreign envoys. The main trading partners were Yuan and Ming dynasties.

However, until the end of the Koryo Dynasty (late 14th C) Pyokrando still played the role as a port being located conveniently near Kaesong, the capital of Koryo Dynasty.

4) Authenticity
We note that the re-use of the structures in converting Koryo Songgyunkwan to a museum paid little respect to the original use of the spaces. However revised nomination states (p.55) that the pan is for the museum to be moved elsewhere and the interior of the Taesong Hall restored to its original state. Could the State Party advice when this is scheduled to take place?

A new building site to move the museum has been set and the design of the museum has been prepared at present. The construction will begin in 2014 after the plan is approved.

As for the Taesong Hall, restoration of the interior will begin in 2015.

5) Protection/nominated property boundaries
a) Could the State Party clarify whether the boundaries of the seven individual nominated property components Manwoldae & Kaesong Chomsongdae Gate; Koryo Songgyunkwan; Sungyang Sowon; Sonjuk Bridge & Phyochung Monuments; Mausoleum of King Wang Kon, Seven Tomb Cluster & Myongrung Cluster; Mausoleum of King Kongmin and the five individual property components comprising the Kaesong Walls as shown on Map 3, p.16 of the nomination dossier coincide exactly with the boundaries of the reserves designated under Articles 27 and 29 of Chapter IV, Law on Protection of Cultural Property (1994) described on p.187 f the nomination dossier?

The former core zone boundaries of individual components of the nominated property, designated under the Articles 27 and 29 of Chapter IV, Law on Protection of Cultural Property (1994) do not coincide with the respective current boundaries described in the present nomination dossier.

Based on and in compliance with the recommendation given in the ICOMOS Evaluation Report (2008) as well as the principles of the Operational Guidelines for the Implementation of the World Heritage Convention (Para. 103-107), their boundaries have been reestablished in terms of extended size for adequate preservation and presentation of the value befitting a world heritage. The Law on Protection of Cultural Property mandates in its Article 27 of Chapter IV that the “reserves have to be designated in a reasonable way so as to facilitate the preservation and management of the historical property...” The current boundaries of the respective core zones not only comply with the law but also reflect the requirements for preservation and management of a world heritage.
Now the reestablished core zone boundaries exactly coincide with the Articles 27 and 29 of Chapter IV, Law on Protection of Cultural Property (1994), and are provided with full legal protection.

The Guideline for Preservation and Management of Core Zone is currently under preparation in order to facilitate and strengthen the implementation of the law ensuring at the same time the economic and cultural lives of the people in the core zone. This guideline is to take legal effect in 2014.

b) The site of the Kwangthongbojeson Temple, which had been built in the memory of the king and queen, is described in the revised nomination dossier (p.107) as being to the west of the tomb, with its monument to the east, but these are not shown on the map of this component (Map 27). Could the State Party clarify whether the nominated property boundary includes them?

The site of the Kwangthongbojeson Temple is to the west of and its monument to the east of the Mausoleum of King Kongmin. They are included in the core zone.
6) Protection/buffer zone
   
a) Could the State Party clarify how the buffer zone has been determined? Does it relate to any existing statutory boundary?
Buffer zone boundary has been delineated to ensure the interrelationship between the components of the nominated property as a serial property and to ensure the visual integrity in terms of natural settings associated with the principle of Fengshui. Along the boundary, there are Mt Songak, Mt Mansu and Muson Peak (the peak to the north of
Mausoleum of King Kongmin) in the north; the ridge of Mt Mansu running to the west; Mt Ryongsu and Acha peak in the south; Mt Puhung and Tokam peak in the east.
The boundary is mainly bordering lanes and small roads that run along the foot of mountains. Northern part, western part and southwestern part outside the buffer zone are forest areas. Eastern part and southeastern part outside the buffer zone are farming lands.
The buffer zone is comprised of statutory areas under protection of the Land Law, Law on Environmental Protection, Law on City Management and Forest Law (refer to nomination: p. 207-213).
Therefore, the buffer zone does relate to existing statutory boundary.

b) We note legal measures for the protection and management of land that currently exist under the Land Law (1977) as described on p. 189-196 of the nomination dossier. However could the State Party clarify how the nominated buffer zone is protected under the Law on Protection of Cultural Property as stated on p.178 (section 4(b)-1)?
The Law on Protection of Cultural Property restricts all activities in the buffer zone that could have negative impact on the nominated property. The buffer zone is protected under the Law on Protection of Cultural Property, Land Law and Law on City Management, Forest Law and Law on Environmental Protection (refer to nomination section 4(b)-1 first paragraph: p. 196).

Within the legal framework of protection and management for cultural property the National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation ensures unified guidance under the leadership of the cabinet (refer to nomination: p. 213).
The Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee which is a non-standing organization comprises heads of the government authorities of Kaesong city for the protection and management of the buffer zone (refer to nomination: Article 55 of Chapter 6, Law on Protection of Cultural Property p. 280, p. 213).
The members of this committee are the Chairman of the Kaesong City People’s Committee, heads of Kaesong City People’s Committee’s Cultural Preservation Department, Management Bureau for Land & Environmental Conservation, City Planning Bureau, Urban Management Bureau, Cooperative Farm Management Committee, Construction Control Section, Education Section, Public Security Office, Public Prosecutors Office (refer to nomination: p. 293).
And it discusses the development plans and implementation of the national policies and laws and takes appropriate measures in accordance with the decision of the National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation (refer to nomination: p. 213-214).
Any plan or activity in defiance of the decision shall be subject to legal punishment according to the Article 55 of the Law on City Management.
The reestablishment of the buffer zone in terms of increased size with the purpose of enhanced protection and management of a world heritage poses a more detailed and practical issues than before. To address these issues the Guideline for the Management of the Buffer Zone is under preparation and will take legal effect in 2014 (refer to nomination 4(b)-1 p. 196).

c) We also note that development strategy is under preparation to prevent an increase dwellings and enterprises from encroaching on the environs of the sites (nomination dossier p.167) and that the guidelines for buffer zone management were to be
finalized in 2011 to take effect according to the Law on Protection of Cultural Property (p.178). It is stated that existing development projects under the long term plan for the development of Kaesong are designed not to damage the natural landscape of Kaesong including Mt Songak, Mt Puhung and Tokam peak. However, could the State Party clarify how the nominated buffer zone will protect the visual integrity of the nominated components of the property in relation to protection of views to and from the nominated components of the property and between them and the guardian mountains (Songak, Janam, Jujak and Jine) around Manwoldadae which comprise the geomantic setting described in the nomination dossier (pp.25-6) together with views to the other peaks that have significance in the landscape including Puhung, Tokam, Ryongsu, Mansu and Acha?

To ensure and protect the visual integrity of the nominated property in all aspects, the following will be specified in the Guideline for the Management of Buffer Zone.

- To control heights of new constructions and extension to existing structures based on sightlines between key elements of the nominated property components and natural features
- To preserve the original alignment of the ancient roads in Kaesong city
- To maintain visual harmony in form and color of buildings so as no to be conspicuous and to adapt to the natural landscape of Kaesong.
- To prohibit change in layout of waterways and volume of water flowing in the vicinity of the historical sites
- To prohibit new development in the current surrounding natural landscape that show the relationship of Fengshui with individual historical sites, which include Mt Songak, Mt Jine, My Ryongsu, Mt Puhung, Tokam peak, Mt Janam, Jujak hill, Mt Mansu and Acha peak, etc.
- To remove any unnecessary and obtrusive structures of facilities and recover the natural landscape as much as possible, where appropriate, by promoting forestation
- To prohibit any factory construction in the urban area

7) Management

We note that there are number of institutions involved in the management of the various nominated property components. The Operational Guidelines for the Implementation of the World Heritage Convention require that there should be a management system or mechanisms for ensuring the coordinated management of the individual components of the nominated property (para.114).

a) Could the State Party clarify how the institutions authorized with public management of the nominated property as listed in Table 19, p.200 of the nomination dossier are coordinated? Are they represented on the Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee?

They take part in the wok for protection and management of the cultural properties including the nominated property on a regular basis annually and this work is more intensified in April and November (the months for the protection of cultural sites and relics) under the guidance of the Cultural Preservation Department of Kaesong City People’s Committee, Kaesong Cultural Property Management Office and Management Office for Mausoleum of King Wang Kon. Besides, if necessary and in particular when any cultural
property gets damaged unexpectedly by natural disasters, they will also be mobilized to assist repair and restoration works.

These institutions are represented on the Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee through the Education Section of Kaesong City People’s Committee and Kaesong Cooperative Farm Management Committee.

b) **Could the State Party clarify the role of buffer zone residents in relation to management of the nominated property? Are they represented on the Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee?**

The nominated property does not only represent important values in the historical and cultural development in the Korean peninsula and East Asia but also is the pride of the citizens of Kaesong. They deeply love the historic assets in Kaesong and consider it as their moral duty to protect them, and participate in their protection voluntarily.

Many students as well as residents volunteer in this work including cleaning of the site and especially when there is damage or danger to the historic properties they all get voluntarily involved to give assistance.

And the views and opinions of Kaesong citizens are fully represented in the Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee through the relevant organs and institutions involved in this committee. To represent and work for the interests of people is the fundamental principle of all state organs, institutions and organizations. Following this fundamental principle all state organs, institutions and organizations always take close contact with the public in that they regularly go among people and discuss with and receive opinions and suggestions from the people. And it is the same case with the Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee, and in this way the views and opinions of Kaesong citizens are fully represented in the committee.

c) **It is stated in the nomination dossier Section 4(b)-1 (p.180) that risk preparedness plan for natural disasters will be prepared. However it does not appear to be scheduled in the Management Plan provided with the nomination. Could the State Party provide information on this?**

Action plan of risk preparedness for natural disaster

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Action Plan</th>
<th>Implementing</th>
<th>Period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>To furnish full set of fire-fighting facilities in Kaesong Namdae Gate, Koryo Songgyunkwan, Sungyang Sown, Sonjuk Bridge and Phyochung Monuments</td>
<td>NBCPC CP Dep.</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>To enhance the fire detection and alarm system, rapid mobilizing system of fire-fighting in sites To strengthen education for visitors concerning the prevention fire</td>
<td>CP Dep. KCPMO MOMKW</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Task Description</td>
<td>Responsible Authority</td>
<td>Status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>To carry out fire-fighting exercises in September every year</td>
<td>CP Dep.</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MOMKW</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>To store the copies of documentation for historic property (in NBCPC, CP Dep., KCPC)</td>
<td>NBCPC</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CP Dep.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>KCPC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>To collaborate with Hydro-meteorological Institute and Seismic Research Institute to reinforce and repair dams/ embankments, drains and stabilize the structures against seismic activity</td>
<td>CP Dep.</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MOMKW</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>To regularly clean out drainages in all the sites</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>MOMKW</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>To regularly apply pest control measures to wooden structures</td>
<td>KCPMO</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>To enhance the detection and alarm system of forest fire</td>
<td>MBLEC</td>
<td>2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>To strengthen the control of people’s activities in the mountains during the period/season of high fire risk.</td>
<td>MBLEC</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>To carry out education programmes to prevent forest fire</td>
<td>MBLEC</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>To regularly check the availability of public mobilization system for extinguishing forest fire</td>
<td>MBLEC</td>
<td>On going</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
World Heritage List 2013
Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong (Democratic People’s Republic of Korea) -
Answers to the Request for Additional Information (II)

1. Could the State Party provide a timeframe for passing and regulating legislation that specifically protects the buffer zone as a contiguous area and enables enforcement of stricter regulations and controls in this area as requested by the World Heritage Committee in its decision 32 Com 8B.21, point 2c)

In order to provide the core zone and the buffer zone of the nominated property with legal protection and to enforce stricter legislations and controls in these areas as requested by the World Heritage Committee in its decision 32 Com 8B.21, point 2c, the draft for the amendment of the Law on Protection of Cultural Property as well as the Regulation for the Implementation of the Law on Protection of Cultural Property have been prepared.

And the draft guidelines for protection and management of the core zones and the buffer zone specifically respecting the characteristics and features of the Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong have also been prepared.

The drafts of the amended Law on Protection of Cultural Property, the Regulation for the Implementation of the Law on Protection of Cultural Property and the newly prepared Guidelines for Protection and Management of the Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong shall be submitted to the relevant organ for approval mid March 2013 to go through process of deliberations and evaluation and be adopted and take legal effect as the official state law around September 2013.

Thus, all activities in the core zones and the buffer zone of the Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong will be enforced stricter legislative control within the framework of the Law on Protection of Cultural Property.

2. Could the State Party consider extending the Kaesong Namdae Gate property component to include the park at its southeast?

National Authority for the Protection of Cultural Heritage (previously the National Bureau for Cultural Property Conservation and renamed at the end of 2012) seriously discussed the proposal made by ICOMOS and came to conclusion that the park area could play an important role in terms of preservation and management of the Gate, and reached to an agreement with the Kaesong City Cultural Preservation Committee to extend the core zone of the Kaesong Namdae Gate to include also the park area. The reestablished core zone of the Namdae Gate shall be provided with legal protection with the Guidelines for Protection and Management of the Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong entering into force.
3. **Could the State Party provide assurances that the area of traditional houses (Marked “old residential quarter” on Map 12, ‘Long term Plan of Urban Construction in Kaesong’, p.99 in the Management Plan) located immediately north northwest of the Namdae Gate is specifically protected as a special area within the buffer zone?**

The area of traditional houses is an object of conservation, because of its great importance in the preservation of the cultural landscape of Kaesong.

In the process of the drafting of amendments of the Law on Protection of Cultural Property, the Regulation for the Implementation of the Law on Protection of Cultural Property and the new preparation of the Guidelines for Protection and Management of the Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong, due attention has been given to protection and management of the area of traditional houses with legal designation, and been specifically dealt with in the Guidelines for Protection and Management of the Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong. With the adoption and legal enforcement of the Law on Protection of Cultural Property, the Regulation for the Implementation of the Law on Protection of Cultural Property and the newly prepared Guidelines for Protection and Management of the Historic Monuments and Sites in Kaesong, the area of old traditional houses will be put under strict protection and control within the legal framework of the Law on Protection of Cultural Property.